

Informatica® Multidomain MDM 10.3

# Upgrading from Version 9.0.1 or 9.1.0 for Oracle

Informatica Multidomain MDM Upgrading from Version 9.0.1 or 9.1.0 for Oracle 10.3 September 2018

#### © Copyright Informatica LLC 1998, 2018

This software and documentation are provided only under a separate license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure. No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form, by any means (electronic, photocopying, recording or otherwise) without prior consent of Informatica LLC.

U.S. GOVERNMENT RIGHTS Programs, software, databases, and related documentation and technical data delivered to U.S. Government customers are "commercial computer software" or "commercial technical data" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, the use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation is subject to the restrictions and license terms set forth in the applicable Government contract, and, to the extent applicable by the terms of the Government contract, the additional rights set forth in FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software License.

Informatica, the Informatica logo, and ActiveVOS are trademarks or registered trademarks of Informatica LLC in the United States and many jurisdictions throughout the world. A current list of Informatica trademarks is available on the web at https://www.informatica.com/trademarks.html. Other company and product names may be trade names or trademarks of their respective owners.

Portions of this software and/or documentation are subject to copyright held by third parties. Required third party notices are included with the product.

The information in this documentation is subject to change without notice. If you find any problems in this documentation, report them to us at infa\_documentation@informatica.com.

Informatica products are warranted according to the terms and conditions of the agreements under which they are provided. INFORMATICA PROVIDES THE INFORMATION IN THIS DOCUMENT "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING WITHOUT ANY WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND ANY WARRANTY OR CONDITION OF NON-INFRINGEMENT.

Publication Date: 2018-12-11

# **Table of Contents**

| Preface 9  |
|--|
| Informatica Resources  |
| Informatica Network  |
| Informatica Knowledge Base   |
| Informatica Documentation  |
| Informatica Product Availability Matrixes                                |
| Informatica Velocity   |
| Informatica Marketplace  |
| Informatica Global Customer Support                                      |
| Chapter 1: Upgrade Overview  |
| Introduction   |
| Select an Upgrade Process  |
| Guidelines for Selecting an Upgrade Process                              |
| Upgrade Process for a Clean Upgrade (Recommended)                        |
| Upgrade Process for an In-place Upgrade                                  |
| Document the Upgrade   |
| Chapter 2: Pre-Upgrade Tasks   |
| Pre-Upgrade Tasks  |
| Prepare for the Upgrade  |
| Prepare the Environment  |
| Process Existing Jobs  |
| Update the MDM Hub Configuration   |
| Register the Operational Reference Stores with the Original Schema Owner |
| Prepare the BPM Upgrade  |
| Resolve Data Issues that Affect the Upgrade                              |
| The Readiness Report   |
| Temporary Data Tables  |
| Readiness Report Check Codes   |
| Generating the Readiness Report  |
| Regenerating the Readiness Report From the Latest Data Check             |
| Running a Script to Fix Data Issues                                      |
| Resolving Manual Mandatory Fix Data Issues                               |
| Resolving Manual Fix Warnings  |
| Chapter 3: Database Tasks  |
| Database Tasks Overview  |
| Set Up Oracle Database   |
| Step 1 Install and Configure Oracle                                      |

|       | Step 2. Set Up Database Instances                             | 36 |
|-------|---|----|
|       | Step 3. Set Up Database Privileges and Connections            | 39 |
|       | Step 4. Create the ActiveVOS Schema                           | 39 |
| Set l | Jp Microsoft SQL Server                                       | 41 |
|       | Step 1. Install and Configure Microsoft SQL Server            | 42 |
|       | Step 2. Create a Microsoft SQL Server Data File Store         | 43 |
|       | Step 3. Install ODBC Driver                                   | 43 |
|       | Step 4. Create the ActiveVOS Schema                           | 43 |
| Set l | Jp IBM DB2 Database   | 45 |
|       | Step 1. Install and Configure IBM DB2                         | 46 |
|       | Step 2. Create a Database and Tablespaces                     | 46 |
|       | Step 3. Bind Packages on the Database Server                  | 50 |
|       | Step 4. Create the ActiveVOS Schema                           | 50 |
| 01    |   |    |
|       | pter 4: Application Server Tasks                              |    |
|       | ication Server Tasks Overview                                 |    |
|       | Jp JBoss  |    |
|       | Configure Java Virtual Machines                               | 54 |
|       | Configure Server Properties for the Full Profile              | 56 |
|       | Create the ActiveVOS Console Administrative User              | 57 |
|       | Start JBoss   | 58 |
| Set l | Jp Oracle WebLogic  | 59 |
|       | Configure the Java Virtual Machines                           | 59 |
|       | Disable WebLogic Server Authentication                        | 62 |
|       | Create the ActiveVOS Console Administrative User              | 62 |
| Addi  | tional Oracle WebLogic Configuration                          | 63 |
|       | Configuring WebLogic for Standalone Process Server Instances  | 64 |
|       | Configuring WebLogic for Multiple MDM Hub Master Databases    | 66 |
|       | Configuring the HTTPS Protocol                                | 67 |
|       | Configuring the JTA Timeout for Informatica Platform          | 67 |
| Set l | Jp IBM WebSphere  | 67 |
|       | Configure Java Virtual Machines                               | 68 |
|       | Encrypt Passwords in the MDM Hub Environment                  | 70 |
|       | Create a Secure Profile in a WebSphere Environment            | 70 |
|       | Create the ActiveVOS Console Administrative User              | 71 |
|       | Configure SOAP Request Timeout for MDM Hub Deployments        | 72 |
| Addi  | tional IBM WebSphere Configuration                            | 72 |
|       | Configuring WebSphere for Standalone Process Server Instances | 73 |
|       | Configuring WebSphere for Multiple MDM Hub Master Databases   | 76 |
|       | Configuring the HTTPS Protocol                                | 77 |
|       | Configuring WebSphere for Informatica Data Director           | 77 |

| Chapter 5: Hub Store Upgrade 7   | 78   |
|--|--|
| Hub Store Upgrade Overview   | 78   |
| Clone the Hub Store (Clean Upgrade)  | 79   |
| Databases Set to a Non-English Locale  | 79   |
| Upgrading the MDM Hub Master Database in Verbose Mode  | 79   |
| Upgrading the MDM Hub Master Database in Silent Mode   | 81   |
| Upgrading Operational Reference Store Databases in Verbose Mode  | 82   |
| Upgrading Operational Reference Store Databases in Silent Mode   | 85   |
| Confirm that the Upgrade Scripts Ran Successfully  | 86   |
| Chapter 6: Hub Server Upgrade (In-place Upgrade) 8   | 37   |
| Hub Server Upgrade Overview  | 87   |
| Upgrading the Hub Server in Graphical Mode   | 88   |
| Upgrading the Hub Server in Console Mode   | 91   |
| Upgrading the Hub Server in Silent Mode  | 93   |
| Configuring the Properties File  | 94   |
| Running the Silent Upgrade   | 96   |
| Run the patchInstallSetup Script   | 96   |
| Copy Hub Server Log Files to the Upgrade Documentation Folder  | 97   |
| Reapplying the Hub Server Upgrade (Optional)   | 98   |
|  |  |
| Chapter 7: Process Server Upgrade (In-place Upgrade) 9   | 99   |
| Chapter 7: Process Server Upgrade (In-place Upgrade)   |  |
|  | 99   |
| Process Server Upgrade Overview  | 99<br>99   |
| Process Server Upgrade Overview  | 99<br>99<br>01   |
| Process Server Upgrade Overview  | 99<br>99<br>01<br>03   |
| Process Server Upgrade Overview  | 99<br>99<br>01<br>03<br>03   |
| Process Server Upgrade Overview  | 99<br>99<br>01<br>03<br>03   |
| Process Server Upgrade Overview  | 99<br>99<br>01<br>03<br>03<br>04<br>04                               |
| Process Server Upgrade Overview  | 99<br>99<br>01<br>03<br>03<br>04<br>04<br>06                         |
| Process Server Upgrade Overview  | 99<br>99<br>01<br>03<br>04<br>04<br>06<br>06                         |
| Process Server Upgrade Overview  | 99<br>99<br>01<br>03<br>04<br>04<br>06<br>06                         |
| Process Server Upgrade Overview  | 99<br>99<br>01<br>03<br>04<br>04<br>06<br>06<br>08                   |
| Process Server Upgrade Overview  | 99<br>99<br>01<br>03<br>04<br>04<br>06<br>06<br>08<br>09             |
| Process Server Upgrade Overview.  Upgrading the Process Server in Graphical Mode.  Upgrading the Process Server in Console Mode.  Upgrading the Process Server in Silent Mode.  Configuring the Properties File.  Running the Process Server Silent Upgrade.  Steps to Upgrade to Informatica Address Verification 5 Integration.  Configure Match Population.  Enabling Match Population.  Copy Process Server Log Files to the Upgrade Documentation Directory.  Reapplying the Process Server Upgrade (Optional).  Chapter 8: Resource Kit Upgrade (In-place Upgrade).  | 99<br>99<br>01<br>03<br>04<br>04<br>06<br>08<br>09                   |
| Process Server Upgrade Overview.  Upgrading the Process Server in Graphical Mode.  Upgrading the Process Server in Console Mode.  10  Upgrading the Process Server in Silent Mode.  Configuring the Properties File.  Running the Process Server Silent Upgrade.  Steps to Upgrade to Informatica Address Verification 5 Integration.  Configure Match Population.  Enabling Match Population.  Copy Process Server Log Files to the Upgrade Documentation Directory.  Reapplying the Process Server Upgrade (Optional).  Chapter 8: Resource Kit Upgrade (In-place Upgrade).  11  Resource Kit Upgrade Overview.  | 99<br>99<br>01<br>03<br>04<br>04<br>06<br>08<br>09<br>10             |
| Process Server Upgrade Overview.  Upgrading the Process Server in Graphical Mode.  Upgrading the Process Server in Console Mode.  Upgrading the Process Server in Silent Mode.  Configuring the Properties File.  Running the Process Server Silent Upgrade.  Steps to Upgrade to Informatica Address Verification 5 Integration.  Configure Match Population.  Enabling Match Population.  Copy Process Server Log Files to the Upgrade Documentation Directory.  Reapplying the Process Server Upgrade (Optional).  Chapter 8: Resource Kit Upgrade (In-place Upgrade).  11  Resource Kit Upgrade Overview.  12  Uninstalling the Resource Kit (In-place Upgrade).  13                               | 99<br>99<br>01<br>03<br>04<br>06<br>06<br>08<br>09<br>10<br>10       |
| Process Server Upgrade Overview.  Upgrading the Process Server in Graphical Mode.  Upgrading the Process Server in Console Mode.  Upgrading the Process Server in Silent Mode.  Configuring the Properties File.  Running the Process Server Silent Upgrade.  Steps to Upgrade to Informatica Address Verification 5 Integration.  Configure Match Population.  Enabling Match Population.  Copy Process Server Log Files to the Upgrade Documentation Directory.  Reapplying the Process Server Upgrade (Optional).  Chapter 8: Resource Kit Upgrade (In-place Upgrade).  11  Resource Kit Upgrade Overview.  12  Uninstalling the Resource Kit (In-place Upgrade).  13  Installing the Resource Kit. | 99<br>99<br>01<br>03<br>04<br>04<br>06<br>08<br>09<br>10<br>11<br>11 |

| JBoss Post-Upgrade Tasks   | 116   |
|--|-------|
| Restart the MDM Hub Environment  | 116   |
| Restarting the Application Servers   | 117   |
| Perform Post-Upgrade Tasks for In-place Upgrade                                    | 117   |
| Validate the Data  | . 117 |
| About the Data Validation Tool Report  | . 117 |
| Unzip the Data Validation Tool Scripts   | . 119 |
| Run the Data Validation Tool to Generate the Initial Results                       | 119   |
| Fixing Data Issues   | . 119 |
| Rerun the Data Validation Tool to Confirm Issues are Resolved                      | . 120 |
| Remove the Data Validation Tool  | 120   |
| Regenerating the Data Validation Tool Report from the Latest Data Check (Optional) | . 120 |
| Drop Objects, Columns, and References to Deprecated Objects                        | . 121 |
| Run the PostInstall Script for Deploying the Hub Server (Conditional)              | 122   |
| Configure WebSphere Administrative Security  | . 123 |
| Unregister the Operational Reference Store   | . 123 |
| Uninstall the EAR files and Remove Data Sources                                    | . 124 |
| Enable WebSphere Administrative Security in the WebSphere Administrative Console   | 124   |
| Configure the Hub Server and Process Server Properties                             | 124   |
| Run the Hub Server PostInstallSetup Script Manually                                | 125   |
| Run the Process Server PostInstallSetup Script                                     | 125   |
| Register the Operational Reference Stores  | 126   |
| Configure Cleanse Functions for Platform Transformations                           | 130   |
| Validate the Upgraded Metadata   | . 131 |
| Validating Metadata  | . 131 |
| Saving the Validation Results  | . 132 |
| Resolving Metadata Validation Messages   | . 132 |
| Review the MDM Hub Environment Report  | 133   |
| Saving the MDM Hub Environment Report  | . 133 |
| Configuring a Proxy User for IBM DB2   | 133   |
| Re-register Operational Reference Stores with the Proxy User                       | . 134 |
| Upgrading the SiperianClient Library Classes for the EJB Protocol                  | 136   |
| Disable the MDM Hub Database Debug Log   | . 137 |
| Prepare the MDM Hub Metadata   | . 137 |
| Upgrade Tests  | 137   |
| MDM Hub Upgrade Tests  | 138   |
| Custom Code Upgrade Tests  | . 138 |
| Provisioning Tool Upgrade Test   | 138   |
| Data Director with Business Entities Upgrade Tests                                 |       |
| Data Director with Subject Areas Upgrade Tests                                     |       |
| Data Director and Hub Server Properties  |       |
| Data Director Global Properties.   | 140   |

| Chapter 10: Search Configuration Upgrade                                 | 141      |
|--|----------|
| Search Configuration Upgrade Overview                                    | 141      |
| Step 1. Set Up Elasticsearch   | 142      |
| Install Elasticsearch  | 142      |
| Create Keystores, Truststore, and Certificates                           | 142      |
| Configure the Elasticsearch Java Virtual Machine (JVM)                   | 143      |
| Configure the Elasticsearch Properties File                              | 144      |
| Secure the Elasticsearch Cluster   | 146      |
| Upload the Search Guard Configuration to Elasticsearch                   | 147      |
| Configure the Client Certificate DN in the Elasticsearch Properties File | 147      |
| Customize the List of Words to Ignore in Searches                        | 148      |
| Customize the List of Synonyms to Include in Searches                    | 148      |
| Start Elasticsearch  | 148      |
| Step 2. Configure the MDM Hub Properties for Search                      | 148      |
| Configure the Hub Server for Search                                      | 149      |
| Configure Process Servers for Search                                     | 150      |
| Step 3. Configure Search by Using the Provisioning Tool                  | 151      |
| Configure the Elasticsearch Cluster                                      | 151      |
| Configure the Search Result Views  | 152      |
| Step 4. Validate the Operational Reference Store                         | 152      |
| Step 5. Index the Search Data  | 153      |
| Chapter 11: ActiveVOS Post-Installation Tasks for the Application Se     | rver 154 |
| ActiveVOS Post-Installation Tasks for the Application Server             | 154      |
| Chapter 12: ActiveVOS Post-Upgrade Tasks for Business Entity Adapt       | er 155   |
| ActiveVOS Post-Upgrade Tasks for the Business Entity Adapter             | 155      |
| Configuring the ActiveVOS URNs for the Business Entity Workflow Adapter  | 156      |
| Set the ActiveVOS Protocol to HTTPS                                      | 156      |
| Update Customized Workflows for Business Entities                        | 157      |
| Updating Presentation Parameters in Workflows for Business Entities      | 157      |
| Enabling File Attachments in Workflows for Business Entities             | 159      |
| Configure the MDM Identity Services for ActiveVOS                        | 160      |
| Custom BeMDMWorkflow Project (In-place Upgrade)                          | 160      |
| Configure Unmerge and Merge Workflow Triggers (In-place Upgrade)         | 161      |
| Add the Entity 360 Framework Task Manager                                | 161      |
| Chapter 13: ActiveVOS Post-Upgrade Tasks for Subject Areas Adapte        | r 162    |
| ActiveVOS Post-Upgrade Tasks for the Subject Area Adapter                | 162      |
| Update the ActiveVOS URNs  | 162      |
| Verifying the Trusted User for ActiveVOS                                 | 163      |

| Update Informatica Data Director Task Configuration for ActiveVOS Workflows based on Subject |
|--|
| Areas  |
| Update the IDD Configuration for the Subject Area-based ActiveVOS Adapter                    |
| Configure Task Triggers For Subject Area Workflow Adapter                                    |
| Jpdate Customized Workflows for Subject Areas.         166                                   |
| Updating Presentation Parameters in Workflows for Subject Areas                              |
| Enabling Attachments in Workflows for Subject Areas  |
| Redeploy the ActiveVOS Workflows based on Subject Areas                                      |
| Generating Business Entity and Business Entity Services Configuration Files                  |
| Appendix A: Troubleshooting the Upgrade Process  |
| Appendix B: Frequently Asked Questions   |
| Appendix C: Processing Existing ActiveVOS Tasks  |
| Processing Existing ActiveVOS Tasks Overview   |
| Migration Properties   |
| Running the Migration Script with a Properties File  |
| Running the Migration Script with Properties on the Command Line                             |
| Appendix D: Configuring Metadata Caching   |
| Configuring Metadata Caching (Optional)  |
| Infinispan Attributes  |
| Editing Infinispan Attributes  |
| Index 192  |

# Preface

Welcome to the *Multidomain MDM Upgrade Guide*. This guide explains how to upgrade your Informatica<sup>®</sup> Multidomain MDM implementation to the most recent version. Ensure you use the *Multidomain MDM Upgrade Guide* that applies to the version you currently have installed.

This guide is intended for technical specialists who are responsible for upgrading their Informatica Multidomain MDM implementation.

# Informatica Resources

# Informatica Network

Informatica Network hosts Informatica Global Customer Support, the Informatica Knowledge Base, and other product resources. To access Informatica Network, visit https://network.informatica.com.

As a member, you can:

- Access all of your Informatica resources in one place.
- · Search the Knowledge Base for product resources, including documentation, FAQs, and best practices.
- · View product availability information.
- Review your support cases.
- Find your local Informatica User Group Network and collaborate with your peers.

# Informatica Knowledge Base

Use the Informatica Knowledge Base to search Informatica Network for product resources such as documentation, how-to articles, best practices, and PAMs.

To access the Knowledge Base, visit <a href="https://kb.informatica.com">https://kb.informatica.com</a>. If you have questions, comments, or ideas about the Knowledge Base, contact the Informatica Knowledge Base team at KB\_Feedback@informatica.com.

## Informatica Documentation

To get the latest documentation for your product, browse the Informatica Knowledge Base at https://kb.informatica.com/\_layouts/ProductDocumentation/Page/ProductDocumentSearch.aspx.

If you have questions, comments, or ideas about this documentation, contact the Informatica Documentation team through email at infa\_documentation@informatica.com.

# Informatica Product Availability Matrixes

Product Availability Matrixes (PAMs) indicate the versions of operating systems, databases, and other types of data sources and targets that a product release supports. If you are an Informatica Network member, you can access PAMs at

https://network.informatica.com/community/informatica-network/product-availability-matrices.

# Informatica Velocity

Informatica Velocity is a collection of tips and best practices developed by Informatica Professional Services. Developed from the real-world experience of hundreds of data management projects, Informatica Velocity represents the collective knowledge of our consultants who have worked with organizations from around the world to plan, develop, deploy, and maintain successful data management solutions.

If you are an Informatica Network member, you can access Informatica Velocity resources at http://velocity.informatica.com.

If you have questions, comments, or ideas about Informatica Velocity, contact Informatica Professional Services at ips@informatica.com.

# Informatica Marketplace

The Informatica Marketplace is a forum where you can find solutions that augment, extend, or enhance your Informatica implementations. By leveraging any of the hundreds of solutions from Informatica developers and partners, you can improve your productivity and speed up time to implementation on your projects. You can access Informatica Marketplace at <a href="https://marketplace.informatica.com">https://marketplace.informatica.com</a>.

# Informatica Global Customer Support

You can contact a Global Support Center by telephone or through Online Support on Informatica Network.

To find your local Informatica Global Customer Support telephone number, visit the Informatica website at the following link:

http://www.informatica.com/us/services-and-training/support-services/global-support-centers.

If you are an Informatica Network member, you can use Online Support at http://network.informatica.com.

# CHAPTER 1

# **Upgrade Overview**

This chapter includes the following topics:

- Introduction, 11
- Select an Upgrade Process, 12
- Document the Upgrade, 14

# Introduction

Thank you for upgrading Informatica Multidomain MDM. You can upgrade directly from the installed version to Multidomain MDM version 10.3.

Important: You must upgrade all the MDM components to the same version of Multidomain MDM.

A Multidomain MDM environment can include a development environment, test environment, and production environment. You must upgrade each of these environments. As a best practice, upgrade your development environment first. Identify and resolve any upgrade issues. After you successfully upgrade the development environment, you can upgrade the test and production environments with a high degree of confidence.

## Before You Begin

Before you begin, ensure that you have the necessary guides and that you review the Product Availability Matrix:

- Ensure that you have the correct upgrade guide for your installed version of Multidomain MDM. On the
  title page, check the major version number in the title *Upgrading from Version*. Make sure it matches the
  major version number in the installed product. To find the version number in the installed product, in the
  MDM Hub Console click Help > About. Click Installation Details. The version number appears in the
  release name column. For the purposes of the upgrade, it does not matter whether hotfixes have been
  applied to the installed product.
- Download the *Multidomain MDM Installation Guide* that applies to your database and application server. To ensure a smooth upgrade, you must perform some of the tasks that are described in the installation guide.
- Review the Product Availability Matrix to learn about changes to the system requirements for this version
  of Multidomain MDM. You can find the matrix on Informatica Network:

https://network.informatica.com/community/informatica-network/product-availability-matrices.

## Versions not covered by this guide

When you upgrade from any of the following versions, contact Informatica Global Customer Support for upgrade instructions:

- Informatica MDM Multidomain Edition version 9.0.2 for IBM DB2 and any hotfix level
- Informatica MDM Multidomain Edition version 9.0.1 for IBM DB2 and any hotfix level
- Any version prior to MDM Multidomain Edition version 9.0.1 for Oracle

# Select an Upgrade Process

You have the following options for upgrading Multidomain MDM:

#### Clean Upgrade (Recommended)

In a clean upgrade, you prepare a new environment with machines that meet the current MDM system requirements. You clone the MDM Hub Master Database and Operational Reference Stores from the existing environment, copy the cloned databases to the new environment, and run the Hub Store upgrade. You install the Hub Server and Process Servers in the new environment by following the instructions in the *Installation Guide*. For information about planning an infrastructure, see the *Multidomain MDM Infrastructure Planning Guide*.

#### In-place Upgrade

For an in-place upgrade, you update the machines that run Multidomain MDM to be compliant with the current MDM system requirements. Then you upgrade the MDM components.

# Guidelines for Selecting an Upgrade Process

The type of upgrade determines which type of upgrade process you can choose. In all cases, the clean upgrade is recommended.

The following table lists the types of upgrades and tells you which upgrade process you can use:

| Type of Upgrade for<br>Multidomain MDM  | Clean Upgrade<br>(recommended) | In-place Upgrade |
|---|--------------------------------|------------------|
| Upgrade to a major or minor version of MDM  | Yes                            | No               |
| Upgrade to a hotfix for the installed version of MDM, where the application server has to be updated to a major version to meet the MDM system requirements           | Yes                            | No               |
| Upgrade to a hotfix for the installed version of MDM, where the application server does not need to be updated to a major version to meet the MDM system requirements | Yes                            | Yes              |

# Upgrade Process for a Clean Upgrade (Recommended)

The process for a clean upgrade consists of the following phases:

| Phase | Task   | Location of Instructions          |
|-------|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1     | Database tasks   | Upgrade Guide                     |
| 2     | Application server tasks   | Upgrade Guide                     |
| 3     | Pre-upgrade tasks  | Upgrade Guide                     |
| 4     | Back up and clone the Hub Store, and then copy the Hub Store to the new machines             | Ask your DBA to perform this task |
| 5     | Hub Store upgrade  | Upgrade Guide                     |
| 6     | Hub Server installation and post-installation tasks  | Installation Guide                |
| 7     | Process Server installation and post-installation tasks                                      | Installation Guide                |
| 8     | Post-upgrade tasks   | Upgrade Guide                     |
| 9     | ActiveVOS post-installation tasks for the application server                                 | Installation Guide                |
| 10    | ActiveVOS post-upgrade tasks for the business entity adapter                                 | Upgrade Guide                     |
| 11    | ActiveVOS post-upgrade tasks for the subject area adapter                                    | Upgrade Guide                     |
| 12    | Resource Kit installation tasks and, if applicable, the Resource Kit post-installation tasks | Installation Guide                |

# Upgrade Process for an In-place Upgrade

The process for an in-place upgrade consists of the following phases:

| Phase | Task   | Location of Instructions |
|-------|--|--------------------------|
| 1     | Database tasks   | Upgrade Guide            |
| 2     | Application server tasks                                     | Upgrade Guide            |
| 3     | Pre-upgrade tasks  | Upgrade Guide            |
| 4     | Hub Store upgrade  | Upgrade Guide            |
| 5     | Hub Server upgrade   | Upgrade Guide            |
| 6     | Process Server upgrade                                       | Upgrade Guide            |
| 7     | Resource Kit upgrade   | Upgrade Guide            |
| 8     | Post-upgrade tasks   | Upgrade Guide            |
| 9     | ActiveVOS post-installation tasks for the application server | Installation Guide       |

| Phase | Task  | Location of Instructions |
|-------|---|--------------------------|
| 10    | ActiveVOS Post-Installation tasks for the business entity adapter | Upgrade Guide            |
| 11    | ActiveVOS Post-Installation tasks for the subject area adapter    | Upgrade Guide            |

<sup>\*</sup> If there are multiple releases between your installed version and the current version, the best practice is to either do a clean upgrade or review all the pre-installation tasks to ensure that you do not miss any changes that have occurred for the database or application server that you use.

# Document the Upgrade

You must capture the details of the Informatica MDM Hub environment before, during, and after you upgrade to verify and, if required, troubleshoot the upgrade. You can provide copies of this information to Informatica Global Customer Support if you require assistance with troubleshooting the upgrade.

The following table describes the sources of upgrade information:

| Upgrade Information   | Source of Information  |
|---|--|
| Data issues that could prevent a successful migration               | Readiness report   |
| Operational Reference Store<br>(ORS) metadata                       | Validation results from the Repository Manager tool in the Hub Console<br>Generate the validation results for the ORS metadata before and after the upgrade.   |
| Configuration settings  | Environment report from the Enterprise Manager tool in the Hub Console The Environment report documents the Hub Server, Process Server, Master Database, and ORS database information. Save the Environment report before and after the upgrade. |
| Database changes  | Database debug log The database debug log documents database events for the Hub Store.   |
| Upgrade events for the Hub<br>Server and Process Server<br>upgrades | Informatica MDM Hub installer log files  |
| Hub Server and Process<br>Server information                        | Hub Server and Process Server log files  |
| Hub Console information   | Hub Console log files  |

## **RELATED TOPICS:**

- "Generating the Readiness Report" on page 31
- <u>"Saving the MDM Hub Environment Report" on page 133</u>

# CHAPTER 2

# Pre-Upgrade Tasks

This chapter includes the following topics:

- Pre-Upgrade Tasks, 15
- Prepare for the Upgrade, 15
- Prepare the Environment, 16
- Process Existing Jobs, 21
- Update the MDM Hub Configuration, 21
- Prepare the BPM Upgrade, 24
- Resolve Data Issues that Affect the Upgrade, 26

# Pre-Upgrade Tasks

Whether you perform a clean upgrade or an in-place upgrade, perform the pre-upgrade tasks to ensure your environment is properly configured.

# Prepare for the Upgrade

Perform the following tasks to prepare for the upgrade:

| Upgrade Task                | Details   |
|-----------------------------|---|
| Read the Release Notes      | The Release Notes contain information about updates to the installation and upgrade process.  Important: Some versions of application servers and databases have known limitations when running Multidomain MDM. Ensure that you perform all suggested workarounds. |
| Read the Release Guide      | The Release Guide contains information about new features and changed behavior.   |
| Get the latest license file | Request the latest license file when you request the upgrade software for Multidomain MDM.  |

| Upgrade Task                              | Details  |
|---|--|
| Review the upgrade restrictions           | <ul> <li>Review the following conditions before you begin the upgrade:</li> <li>All the components of the Multidomain MDM implementation must be the same version. If you have multiple versions of Multidomain MDM, each version must be installed in a separate environment. Different versions of Multidomain MDM cannot coexist in the same environment.</li> <li>You must not make any major changes to your environment while you upgrade Multidomain MDM. For example, do not upgrade the Oracle, IBM DB2, or Microsoft SQL Server database during the upgrade process.</li> <li>You must upgrade your Operational Reference Store (ORS) using the upgrade scripts provided. The Repository Manager is not intended to be used as an upgrade tool because some of the artifacts might not be carried over or might be carried over incorrectly from one version to another. For more information, see the Multidomain MDM Release Notes.</li> </ul> |
| Create an upgrade<br>documentation folder | Create a folder named upgradedoc to store copies of all your upgrade artifacts such as metadata validation results, environment reports, and log files. If you encounter problems during the upgrade, you need to send a copy of this directory to Informatica Global Customer Support for analysis.   |
| Review the MDM Hub<br>Environment Report  | Use the Enterprise Manager tool in the Hub Console to review the current MDM Hub configuration for Hub Servers, Process Servers, the MDM Hub Master Database, and Operational Reference Store databases. Also note the version history of the components. Save a copy of the environment report in the upgrade documentation folder.   |

# Prepare the Environment

Perform the tasks for the upgrade process you chose.

# Clean Upgrade

Perform the following tasks for a clean upgrade:

| Task   | Description  |
|--|--|
| Verify minimum<br>system requirements  | Verify that the machines meet the hardware and software requirements for the MDM Hub installation. The hardware requirements are dependent on the data, processing volumes, and business rules.  |
|  | To install the MDM Hub, the machines must meet the following minimum requirements:  - Disk space. 4.9 GB  - RAM for the development environment. 4 GB  |
|  | To verify the run-time physical memory requirements of the MDM Hub components, use the following formula:  |
|  | Total run-time memory requirement for MDM Hub components = JDK JVM max heap size of the application server + operating system native heap size   |
| Install Java<br>Development Kit<br>(JDK)   | Install a supported version of the JDK on the machine on which you want to install the MDM Hub. The JDK is not bundled with the MDM Hub installers.  Note: Use the same Java version on the application server machines and on the machines on which you want to launch the Hub Console. |
|  | If you want to install Informatica platform on HP-UX, install the supported version of the JDK on the HP-UX machine. The JDK is not bundled with the Informatica platform installer for HP-UX. The JDK is bundled with the Informatica platform installers for all other platforms.      |
| Install Visual C++<br>Redistributable for<br>Visual Studio 2015 on<br>Windows only | On Windows systems, Multidomain MDM requires Visual C++ Redistributable for Visual Studio 2015 to support the name search feature and the matching feature.  |
| Set environment  | Set the environment variables for the MDM Hub installation.  |
| variables  | To use the correct JDK, set the following environment variables to point to the JDK directory: - JAVA_HOME. Required - PATH. Required  |
|  | - INFA_JDK_HOME. Optional. Required if you want to install Informatica platform on AIX or HP-UX.   |
|  | To set the correct locale behavior for Oracle, set the NLS_LANG environment variable for client application environments such as the Oracle loader, and the MDM Hub components.  |
|  | Specify the NLS_LANG parameter in the following format:  |
|  | NLS_LANG = <language>_<territory>.<character set=""></character></territory></language>  |
|  | <b>Note:</b> To store and search for records that contain Chinese, Japanese, Korean, or accented characters, set the character set to UTF-8.   |
|  | For more information about NLS_LANG settings, see the Oracle documentation.  |
|  | If you want to install Informatica platform with security enabled for the domain, set the INFA_TRUSTSTORE environment variable to point to the following directory:  |
|  | <pre><informatica directory="" installation="" platform="">/Client/clients/shared/ security</informatica></pre>  |
| Set the operating system locale  | Set the same operating system locale for the Hub Server, the MDM Hub Master Database,<br>Operational Reference Store, and the Hub Console.   |
| Set up the X Window<br>System on UNIX  | If you want to run the installer in graphical mode on UNIX, set up an X Window System. An X Window System is a graphics display server. For more information about setting up an X Window System, see the documentation for your operating system.                                       |

| Task  | Description   |
|---|---|
| Disable access to the root welcome page for your application server | To improve security, disable access to the root welcome page for your application server. For instructions, see the documentation for your application server.  |
| Disable insecure TLS cipher suites                                  | To improve security, in the Java runtime environment that is used with Multidomain MDM, disable insecure TLS cipher suites.  1. Open the following file:/jdk <version>/jre/lib//security/java.security  2. Find the property jdk.tls.disabledAlgorithms and update the value to include the following list of insecure cipher suites:</version> |
|   | jdk.tls.disabledAlgorithms = SSLv3, RC4, MD5withRSA, DH keySize < 1024, EC keySize < 224, DES40_CBC, RC4_40, 3DES_EDE_CBC, EDH-RSA-DES-CBC3-SHA, ECDHE-RSA-DES-CBC3-SHA, DES-CBC3-SHA   |
|   | For more information about the property, see the documentation for your JDK.  |

Perform the following additional tasks for a clean upgrade:

| Task  | Details   |
|---|---|
| Validate the metadata                                 | Ensure the Operational Reference Stores (ORS) do not have any validation errors. If you upgrade the Hub Store when an ORS contains metadata that is not valid, the upgrade might generate unexpected results. Use the Repository Manager in the Hub Console to validate metadata. Resolve any validation issues and then validate the metadata again to confirm that you have resolved the validation issues. |
|   | Save a copy of the final validation results in the upgradedoc upgrade documentation folder.   |
|   | Use the Repository Manager tool in the MDM Hub Console to validate and then save the validation results.  |
| Update persistent ID implementation                   | If you use persistent IDs, contact Informatica Global Customer Support. You must update the persistent ID implementation to be compatible with the upgraded version of Multidomain MDM.   |
| Run the readiness report and resolve the data issues. | For more information, see <u>"Resolve Data Issues that Affect the Upgrade" on page 26</u>   |

# In-place Upgrade

Perform the following tasks for an in-place upgrade:

| Task   | Details   |
|--|---|
| Update the MDM<br>environment to meet<br>system requirements                       | You might need to update the operating system, application server, JDK, and database server. For system requirements, see the Product Availability Matrix for this version of Multidomain MDM (MDM) on Informatica Network: <a href="https://network.informatica.com/community/informatica-network/product-availability-matrices/overview">https://network.informatica.com/community/informatica-network/product-availability-matrices/overview</a> .  Update the machines that run MDM to be compliant with the current MDM system requirements. |
| Install Visual C++<br>Redistributable for<br>Visual Studio 2015 on<br>Windows only | On Windows systems, Multidomain MDM requires Visual C++ Redistributable for Visual Studio 2015 to support the name search feature and the matching feature.   |
| Validate the metadata  | Ensure the Operational Reference Stores (ORS) do not have any validation errors. If you upgrade the Hub Store when an ORS contains metadata that is not valid, the upgrade might generate unexpected results. Use the Repository Manager in the Hub Console to validate metadata. Resolve any validation issues and then validate the metadata again to confirm that you have resolved the validation issues.   |
|  | Save a copy of the final validation results in the upgradedoc upgrade documentation folder.   |
|  | Use the Repository Manager tool in the MDM Hub Console to validate and then save the validation results.  |
| Update persistent ID implementation  | If you use persistent IDs, contact Informatica Global Customer Support. You must update the persistent ID implementation to be compatible with the upgraded version of Multidomain MDM.   |

| Task  | Details   |
|---|---|
| Back up the implementation  | Back up your current implementation to retain your customizations and to allow you to restore the environment. If you encounter issues during the upgrade, you can restore your environment from the backup.  |
|   | Back Up the Schema  |
|   | Perform a full back up of the schema. You cannot roll back schema changes that the upgrade process makes. If you encounter upgrade issues, you can restore the schema from the backup. To back up your schema, see the documentation for the database.  |
|   | Back up the Hub Server and Process Server installed directories   |
|   | Before you install the Hub Server and Process Servers, back up the Hub Server and Process Server installation folders in your environment.  |
|   | Back Up Your Data Director Applications   |
|   | For information about exporting Data Director applications with subject areas, see the Multidomain MDM Data Director Implementation Guide.  |
|   | Register or Back Up Customizations  |
|   | Customizations that you register in the Hub Console such as custom queries, custom functions, and user exits are maintaining during the upgrade process.  |
|   | Back up the latest source code of customizations that you do not register in the Hub Console. Unregistered customizations might be unavailable after you upgrade.   |
|   | Back Up Customized Cleanse Engine Configuration Files   |
|   | Back up any cleanse engine configuration files that you have customized.  |
| Configure the<br>JAVA_HOME<br>environment variable                  | JBoss or WebLogic. If you apply the upgrade to the existing installation directory, perform the following steps:  1. In a JBoss environment, manually remove the JAVA_HOME environment variable setting from the following file:  - Windows: <mdm directory="" hub="" installation="">\setSiperianEnv.bat  - UNIX: <mdm directory="" hub="" installation="">/setSiperianEnv.sh  2. In a JBoss or WebLogic environment, set the JAVA_HOME environment variable to the path of a supported JDK version.</mdm></mdm> |
| Disable access to the root welcome page for your application server | To improve security, disable access to the root welcome page for your application server. For instructions, see the documentation for your application server.  |
| Set the JBoss<br>Management Port                                    | In JBoss environments, you need to set the JBoss management port in the cmxserver.properties file before you upgrade. If you do not set the property, the upgrade fails with an error.  1. Navigate to the following directory: <infamdm_install_directory>/hub/server/resources  2. In a text editor, open the cmxserver.properties file.  3. Add the following property and specify the JBoss management port number:  cmx.jboss7.management.port=[port]  4. Save the file.</infamdm_install_directory>         |
| Run the readiness report and resolve the data issues.               | For more information, see <u>"Resolve Data Issues that Affect the Upgrade" on page 26</u>   |

# **Process Existing Jobs**

Perform the following tasks to process existing jobs:

| Upgrade Task   | Details   |
|--|---|
| Ensure no unmerged<br>matches for relationship<br>base objects | Ensure there are no unmerged matches for relationship base objects. Unmerged matches for relationship base objects are lost during the upgrade process.                           |
| Run load job on staging tables that contain records            | In Microsoft SQL Server environments, run the load batch job on staging tables that contain records.  |
|  | If you upgrade the Operational Reference Store when the staging tables contain records, the upgrade can fail because the log file size can exceed the available hard drive space. |
| Complete stage jobs and delete stage table contents            | Before you upgrade the Operational Reference Store, complete any stage jobs that are in progress, and then delete the contents of the stage table.                                |
|  | If you do not delete the contents of the stage table, the Operational Reference Store upgrade takes longer than expected to complete in Microsoft SQL Server environments.        |

# Update the MDM Hub Configuration

Perform the following tasks to update the MDM Hub configuration.

| Upgrade Task   | Details   |
|--|---|
| Grant select right on SYS.V_   | To grant the select right, run the following SQL statement:   |
| \$PARAMETER for the ORS user   | <pre>grant select on SYS.V_\$PARAMETER to <operational reference<br="">Store user&gt;;</operational></pre>  |
| Remove special characters from names in the subject area configuration         | You cannot use special characters in names in the Provisioning tool. If you plan to generate a business entity schema from a subject area configuration, you must first remove any special characters from the names in the subject area configuration. |
| Register the Operational Reference<br>Store with the original schema<br>owner. | For more information, see "Register the Operational Reference Stores with the Original Schema Owner" on page 22.  |
| Ensure column names do not contain reserved words                              | Additional keywords have been marked as reserved in recent versions of Multidomain MDM. Ensure you do not use reserved keywords in your implementation.   |
|  | For a complete list of reserved words, refer to the "Requirements for Defining Schema Objects" section of the <i>Multidomain MDM Configuration Guide</i> .  |
|  | To request a script that changes the name of a column that contains data, contact Informatica Global Customer Support.  |

| Upgrade Task  | Details   |
|---|---|
| Ensure mapped columns have compatible data types  | If you use an Oracle database for your Operational Reference Store, check the mappings from landing table to staging table to ensure that the data types of the mapped columns are compatible.  |
|   | In previous versions, you can create a mapping from a landing table to a staging table where the data types of the mapped columns are not compatible. In this version, the data types of the mapped columns must be compatible. When you load data, if there is a data type mismatch, the load fails with an error in the log files.                    |
|   | For more information about mapping columns, see the <i>Multidomain MDM Configuration Guide</i> .  |
| Back up your user preferences from<br>the C_REPOS_DS_PREF table and the<br>C_REPOS_DS_PREF_DETAIL table | If your Data Director environment includes user preferences for shown or hidden columns, the settings are lost when you upgrade because the cryptographic hash algorithm has changed in this version. After you upgrade, recreate your user preferences.  |
|   | For more information about Data Director global properties, see the Multidomain MDM Data Director Implementation Guide.   |
| Ensure users have a valid email address   | Ensure that existing users have valid email addresses associated with their user names in the Hub Console. To reset their passwords to access the MDM Hub, users must have a valid email address.   |
|   | For more information about editing user information in the Hub Console, see the <i>Multidomain MDM Security Guide</i> . <b>Note:</b> You cannot change the email address for the admin user in the Hub Console. To change the email address for the admin user, update the admin user entry directly in the C_REPOS_USER table under CMX_SYSTEM schema. |
| Register indexes  | If you upgrade schemas with custom indexes, you must register the custom indexes. Use the RegisterCustomIndex SIF API to register the custom indexes.   |
|   | For more information about the RegisterCustomIndex SIF API, see the Multidomain MDM Services Integration Framework Guide.   |

# Register the Operational Reference Stores with the Original Schema Owner

If any of the Operational Reference Store (ORS) databases are registered with a proxy user, register the ORS database with the original schema owner. You must register the ORS with the original schema owner to ensure that you have sufficient privileges to perform the upgrade operations. You can reregister the ORS with the proxy user after you upgrade. The original default schema owner is CMX\_ORS.

- 1. Start the Hub Console.
  - The **Change database** dialog box appears.
- 2. Select the MDM Hub Master database, and click Connect.
- 3. Select the **Databases** tool from the **Configuration** workbench.
- 4. Select Write Lock > Acquire Lock.
- 5. Click the **Register database** button.
  - The Informatica MDM Hub Connection Wizard appears and prompts you to select the database type.
- 6. Select the type of database, and click Next.

- 7. Configure connection properties for the database.
  - a. Select an Oracle connection method, and then click Next.

You can select the following Oracle connection methods:

#### Service

Connect to Oracle by using the service name.

#### SID

Connect to Oracle by using the Oracle System ID.

For more information about SERVICE and SID names, see the Oracle documentation.

The Connection Properties page appears.

b. Specify the connection properties for the connection type that you select, and click Next.

You can configure the following connection properties:

#### **Database Display Name**

Name for the Operational Reference Store that must appear in the Hub Console.

#### **Machine Identifier**

Prefix given to keys to uniquely identify records from the Hub Store instance.

#### Database host name

IP address or name of the server that hosts the Oracle database.

#### SID

Oracle System Identifier that refers to the instance of the Oracle database running on the server. The **SID** field appears if you selected the **SID** connection type.

#### Service

Name of the Oracle SERVICE used to connect to the Oracle database. The **Service** field appears if the you selected the **Service** connection type.

#### **Port**

The TCP port of the Oracle listener running on the Oracle database server. The default is 1521.

#### **Oracle TNS Name**

Name by which the database is known on your network as defined in the  ${\tt TNSNAMES.ORA}$  file of the application server.

For example: mydatabase.mycompany.com.

You set the Oracle TNS name when you install the Oracle database. For more information about the Oracle TNS name, see the Oracle documentation.

#### Schema Name

Name of the Operational Reference Store.

#### **User name**

Specify the original user name for the ORS. Default is CMX\_ORS.

#### **Password**

Password associated with the original user for the ORS.

The **Summary** page appears.

c. Review the summary, and specify additional connection properties.

The following table describes the additional connection properties that you can configure:

| Property                             | Description   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Connection URL                       | Connect URL. The Connection Wizard generates the connect URL by default. The following list shows the format of the connect URL for the Oracle connection types:  Service connection type |
|                                      | jdbc:oracle:thin:@//database_host:port/service_name   |
|                                      | SID connection type   |
|                                      | jdbc:oracle:thin:@//database_host:port:sid  |
|                                      | For a service connection type, you have the option to customize and later test a different connection URL.  |
| Create datasource after registration | Select to create the datasource on the application server after registration.   |
|                                      | <b>Note:</b> If you do not select the option, you must manually configure the data source.  |

- d. For a service connection type, if you want to change the default URL, click the **Edit** button, specify the URL, and then click **OK**.
- 8. Click Finish.

The **Registering Database** dialog box appears.

9. Click OK.

The MDM Hub registers the ORS.

# Prepare the BPM Upgrade

Perform the following tasks to prepare for the BPM upgrade:

# Choose a workflow adapter

Review the following upgrade options for workflow adapters, and choose the upgrade option that suits your needs:

| Current<br>Workflow<br>Adapter | Upgrade Options  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| SIPERIAN                       | Deprecated.  |
|                                | Option 1   |
|                                | Keep SIPERIAN as the primary workflow adapter.   |
|                                | Option 2   |
|                                | Upgrade to the BE ActiveVOS workflow adapter based on business entities. You must have a business entity configuration to use the BE ActiveVOS workflow adapter.   |
|                                | For more information, see Migrating IDD Applications to the Business Entity Data Model.  |
| Informatica<br>ActiveVOS       | This workflow adapter is based on subject areas and operates using SIF APIs.  Option 1   |
|                                | Keep Informatica ActiveVOS as the primary workflow adapter.  |
|                                | Option 2   |
|                                | Upgrade to the BE ActiveVOS workflow adapter based on business entities. You must have a business entity configuration to use the BE ActiveVOS workflow adapter.   |
|                                | For more information, see the Multidomain MDM Data Director Migration Guide.   |
| BE ActiveVOS                   | This workflow adapter is based on business entities and operates using business entity services.   |
|                                | You must use the version of ActiveVOS that is defined in the Product Availability Matrix. If an older version is detected in your environment, the upgrade process installs the required version of ActiveVOS. |

# Prepare to move from standalone ActiveVOS to embedded ActiveVOS (In-place Upgrade)

If you are upgrading existing machines and want to move from standalone ActiveVOS to embedded ActiveVOS, perform the following upgrade tasks:

| Upgrade Task  | Description  |
|---|--|
| Remove the ActiveVOS data sources                     | If the standalone ActiveVOS server is in the same JBoss instance, WebSphere profile, or WebLogic domain as Multidomain MDM, remove the data source for ActiveVOS from the application server.  |
| Edit the URN mapping in<br>a WebSphere<br>environment | 1. Launch the ActiveVOS Console. In a browser, type the following URL, substituting the correct host name and port number:  - Secure connections. https:// <host>:<port>/activevos - Non-secure connections. http://<host>:<port>/activevos 2. In the ActiveVOS Console, on the Home page, click Administration &gt; Configure Server &gt; URN Mappings. 3. Ensure that URN java:comp/env/jdbc/ActiveVOS maps to URL java:comp/env/jdbc/ActiveVOS.</port></host></port></host> |

## Edit the build.properties file (In-place Upgrade)

If you use ActiveVOS, perform the following tasks to edit the build.properties file:

| Upgrade Task   | Details  |
|--|--|
| Configure the database connection properties for IBM DB2 | In IBM DB2 environments, before you upgrade, add the ActiveVOS database connection properties to the build.properties file in <mdm directory="" hub="" installation="">/hub/server/bin.  The following sample shows the ActiveVOS database connection properties with sample entries:  activevos.db.type=db2 activevos.db.server=localhost activevos.db.port=50000 activevos.db.user=AVOS activevos.db.dbname=INFA102 activevos.db.schemaname=AVOS activevos.db.jdbc.url=jdbc:db2://localhost:50000/INFA102 activevos.b4p.url=http://localhost:9080/active-bpel/services/ AeB4PTaskClient-taskOperations</mdm> |
| Configure the<br>ActiveVOS<br>installation<br>directory  | If the upgrade process detects that the installed version of ActiveVOS does not meet the system requirements, the upgrade process installs the required version of ActiveVOS in a new directory. To install ActiveVOS in the same directory as a previous installation, delete or comment out the following entry in the build.properties file:  activevoslinstall.dir= <activevos directory="" installation=""></activevos>   |

# Resolve Data Issues that Affect the Upgrade

The upgrade process migrates the schema to a new data structure. Generate a readiness report to identify data issues that affect the schema migration. The readiness report is a CSV file that the readiness\_start.sql script creates in the same location as the database debug log files. You can run the readiness\_start.sql script to resolve many of the data issues. If you do not resolve the issues that the readiness report identifies, the upgrade fails.

# The Readiness Report

The readiness report identifies the data issues that you must resolve before you migrate the schema to the new data structure. Run a script to perform a data check and create the READINESS\_REPORT<report ID>.CSV file.

The readiness report outlines the issues that you must resolve before you upgrade.

The readiness report contains the following sections:

## **Detailed Temporary Data Tables**

Lists the names of the temporary data tables that contain a copy of the records with data issues. Refer to the information in these tables to investigate and resolve data issues.

#### Summary

Lists all issues found during the data check.

The following table describes the information in each column:

| Column           | Description   |
|------------------|---|
| Ref. #           | Row number  |
| Check Code       | Code that identifies the data issue                             |
| Description      | Issue that causes the error for that particular check code      |
| Fix Type         | Issue in the Auto Mandatory Fix section have a fix type of auto |
| Foreign Key Name | Name of the foreign key with data issues                        |
| Original Count   | Number of data issues that the initial data check found         |
| Current Count    | Number of data issues that the most recent data check found     |

## **Details of Auto Mandatory Fix Issues**

Lists the issues that are fixed by running a script. You must fix these issues before you upgrade.

The following table describes the information in each column:

| Column                    | Description  |
|---------------------------|--|
| Ref. #                    | Row number   |
| Check Code                | Code that identifies the data issue                                    |
| Description               | Issue that causes the error for that particular check code             |
| Fix Type                  | Issue in the <b>Auto Mandatory Fix</b> section have a fix type of auto |
| Foreign Key Name          | Name of the foreign key with data issues                               |
| Original Count            | Number of data issues that the initial data check found                |
| Current Count             | Number of data issues that the most recent data check found            |
| <base name="" object=""/> | Number of data issues for a particular base object.                    |
| Others                    | Number of issues not specific to a particular base object              |

Two rows below the details of the auto mandatory fix issues identify the base object table record count and the cross-reference table record count. These rows display the total number of base object and cross-reference tables in the schema to provide some perspective on the percentage of records that have data issues.

## **Details of Manual Mandatory Fix Issues**

Lists the issues you cannot run a script to fix. You must fix these issues before you upgrade.

The following table describes the information in the column:

| Column      | Description                                    |
|-------------|--|
| Ref. #      | Row number                                     |
| Check Code  | Code that identifies the data issue            |
| Description | Description of the issue that caused the error |
| Object Name | Name of the base object that the issue affects |

#### **Detail of Manual Warnings**

Lists the issues that are optional to fix before upgrading. The manual warnings cannot be fixed by running a script.

The following table describes the information in the column:

| Column      | Description                                    |
|-------------|--|
| Ref. #      | Row number                                     |
| Check Code  | Code that identifies the data issue            |
| Description | Description of the issue that caused the error |
| Object Name | Name of the base object that the issue affects |

## Warning of Columns Unrelated to Hierarchy Manager in Hierarchy Relationship Base Objects

Lists the base object table name, the name of the user column, and the number of records that the upgrade process merges. The upgrade process merges duplicate hierarchy manager relationship base objects records so that the MDM Hub can maintain the effective periods in the cross-reference table. Assess the impact that the merge has on the user columns.

# **Temporary Data Tables**

The temporary data tables register issues that the readiness report identifies. The readiness\_start.sql script creates the temporary tables each time you check the data or fix the data.

The script generates the following temporary tables when it creates the readiness report:

#### MI\_D\_<timestamp>

Contains registered data for issues related to duplicate ORIG\_ROWID\_OBJECT values in the cross-reference records and issues related to check code Q\_HM\_NULL. To fix these issues, run the  $readiness\_start.sql$  script.

#### MI\_F\_<timestamp>

Contains registered data for issues related to check codes Q\_HFKM\_RMP and Q\_HFKM\_DUP. To fix these issues, run the  $readiness\ start.sql\ script$ .

## MI\_I\_<timestamp>

Contains registered data for issues related to check codes Q100\_DEPR, Q101\_DEPR, XREF\_CUC\_DUPL, and Q\_DSI. To fix these issues, run the readiness start.sql script.

## MI\_M\_<timestamp>

Contains registered data for issues related to check code Q11.5. Fix these issues manually.

#### MI\_R\_<timestamp>

Contains registered data for issues related to check codes Q19.5, Q9, and Q5. Fix these issues manually.

#### MI\_REPORT

Contains the data for the latest readiness report.

#### MI\_FIX\_IS\_DONE

Contains information that is used by the readiness start.sql. You can ignore this table.

#### MI\_SQL\_SAMPLES

Contains samples of the SQL code that the readiness script uses to identify issues, such as XREF\_CUC\_DUPL. You can modify these scripts to remove null values.

## **RELATED TOPICS:**

- "Running a Script to Fix Data Issues" on page 32
- "Resolving Manual Mandatory Fix Data Issues" on page 32
- "Resolving Manual Fix Warnings" on page 33

# Readiness Report Check Codes

The readiness reports organizes the data issues by check code. Each check code corresponds with a specific data issue. Check codes can have a fix type of auto or manual.

The following table outlines the possible issues that the readiness report identifies:

| Check Code                              | Description   | Fix Type |
|---|---|----------|
| Q0                                      | Multiple ROWID_XREFs have the same HMXR.SRC_ROWID_OBJECT value. The SRC_ROWID_OBJECT column provides the original ROWID_OBJECT value for the XREF.ORIG_ROWID_OBJECT column. Each cross-reference table must have unique values in the ORIG_ROWID_OBJECT column. | Auto     |
| Q19 and Q19_2                           | The HMXR table lineage exists for cross-reference records but this lineage represents the same ORIG_ROWID_OBJECT value for multiple cross-reference records.  | Auto     |
| Q2_9, Q2_9_DR,<br>Q2_9_M, and<br>Q2_9_U | Merged cross-reference records have no lineage in the HMXR table. Duplicate ORIG_ROWID_OBJECT values exist for multiple cross-reference records.  | Auto     |
| Q2_inc                                  | Merged records do not have lineage in the HMXR table. The value of HMXR.TGT_ROWID_OBJECT does not equal the value of XREF.ROWID_OBJECT. Duplicate records exist because of the history data and cross-reference data is not consistent.                         | Auto     |
| Q3_E                                    | Merged records do not have lineage in the HMXR table. The XREF.PUT_UPDATE_MERGE value is 1. Duplicate records exist. The value of XREF.ROWID_OBJECT does not match HMXR.TGT_ROWID_OBJECT.   | Auto     |
| Q10                                     | The base object record foreign key and the cross-reference record foreign key are not consistent. The foreign keys have a valid relationship to the parent record.  | TBD      |

| Check Code    | Description  | Fix Type |
|---------------|--|----------|
| Q10.CBN       | The base object foreign key and the cross-reference record foreign key are not consistent. The base object foreign key does not have a valid relationship to the parent cross-reference record.  | TBD      |
| Q10.PBN       | The base object foreign key and cross-reference record foreign key are not consistent. The cross-reference foreign key does not have a valid relationship to the parent base object.   | TBD      |
| Q10.NE        | The base object foreign key and cross-reference record foreign key are not consistent. The foreign keys have relationships to different parent base objects.   | TBD      |
| Q11           | The base object foreign key and cross-reference record foreign key are not consistent. The child base object has a valid relationship to the parent cross-reference record and the parent base object record.  | TBD      |
| Q11.NE        | The base object foreign key and cross-reference record foreign key are not consistent. The child base object has a valid relationship to the parent cross-reference record but not to the parent base object record.   | TBD      |
| Q_HFKM_DUPL   | The lineage of a cross-reference table ROWID_XREF value is tracked multiple times in the HFKM table.   | Auto     |
| Q_HFKM_RMP    | The HFKM table lineage of the foreign key is not correct. The value of HFKM.AFFECTED_TGT_VALUE does not equal the value of the child cross-reference foreign key.  | Auto     |
| Q_HM_NULL     | Some Hierarchy Manager columns for a relationship base object have NULL values. If you still have columns with this error after you run the readiness_start.sql script to fix data issues, you must fix these columns manually because there is not enough information for the script to assign values to these columns. Some relationship base objects have NULL values for one or more of the following Hierarchy Manager columns:  - Entity base object 1 - Entity base object 2 - Hierarchy foreign key column - type CODE - Rel type foreign key column - type CODE | Auto     |
| XREF_CUC_DUPL | A custom unique column has duplicate values in multiple base object records at the cross-reference level.  | Manual   |
|               | Cross-reference records that belong to multiple base object records cannot share the same custom unique column value.  |          |
| Q_DSI         | Column names in the database conflict with temporary columns or permanent columns that the migration process introduces.   | Manual   |
| Q100_DEPR     | The schema has objects that have dependencies on deprecated tables and deprecated sequences.  The following relationships and lookup definitions are deprecated:  - A relationship on a custom unique field and a lookup on a custom unique field that is not in the same relationship.  - A relationship on a custom unique field and a lookup on ROWID_OBJECT.  To use objects with issue Q100_DUP after you upgrade, you must resolve the dependencies.   | Manual   |
| Q101_DEPR     | The customer schema has objects that have deprecated lookup and relationship combinations.   | Manual   |

| Check Code | Description   | Fix Type |
|------------|---|----------|
| Q11.5      | The foreign key in a child cross-reference record does not exist in the parent cross-reference record.                | Manual   |
| Q19.5      | The HMXR table has more than the expected number of records. The extra records likely have values that are not valid. | Manual   |
| Q5         | A ROWID_OBJECT value exists in a base object record that does not exist in a cross-reference record.                  | Manual   |
| Q9         | A ROWID_OBJECT value exists in a cross-reference that does not exist in a base object record.                         | Manual   |

## **RELATED TOPICS:**

- "Running a Script to Fix Data Issues" on page 32
- "Resolving Manual Mandatory Fix Data Issues" on page 32
- "Resolving Manual Fix Warnings" on page 33

# Generating the Readiness Report

To generate the readiness report, run the readiness start.sql script.

- 1. Navigate to the following directory:
  - On UNIX. <MDM Hub distribution directory>/database/resources/database/migration\_readiness/ oracle
  - On Windows. <MDM Hub distribution directory>\database\resources\database\migration\_readiness \oracle
- 2. Connect to the Operational Reference Store (ORS) schema for which you want to generate a readiness report.
- 3. In SQL\*Plus, run the readiness start.sql script.
- 4. Select the appropriate option to generate the readiness report:
  - a. To create a readiness report, enter  ${\bf y}$  for the first option, Check data and generate report (y/n). If you are running readiness\_start.sql for the first time, you must select  ${\bf y}$  for option 1. The time required to perform the data check depends on the size of the schema and the number of parent records and child records.
  - b. Enter **n** for the second option, Fix data issues identified by data check and generate report (y/n).
  - c. Enter n for the third option, Regenerate report from previous data check (y/n).
- 5. Open the readiness report in a program that can open CSV files, such as Excel, to review the data issues identified for the schema.

# Regenerating the Readiness Report From the Latest Data Check

You can regenerate the readiness report CSV file from the latest data check. To regenerate the readiness report, run the readiness start.sql script.

- In SQL\*Plus, run the readiness start.sql script.
- 2. Select the appropriate option to regenerate the readiness report from the latest data check:
  - a. Enter  $\boldsymbol{n}$  for the first option, Check data and generate report (y/n).
  - b. Enter n for the second option, Fix data issues identified by data check and generate report (y/n).
  - c. To regenerate the readiness report from the previous data check, enter  $\mathbf{y}$  for the third option, Regenerate report from previous data check (y/n).

The readiness report is regenerated from the latest data check. A new data check is not performed.

3. Open the readiness report in a program that can open CSV files, such as Excel, to review the data issues identified for your schema.

# Running a Script to Fix Data Issues

To fix data issues with a fix type of auto, run the readiness\_start.sql script. You have to generate a readiness report before you can run the script to fix data issues.

- 1. Connect to the Operational Reference Store (ORS) schema for which you want to fix data issues.
- 2. In SQL\*Plus, run the readiness start.sql script found in the following locations:
  - On Windows: <infamdm\_install\_directory>\server\resource\database\migration\_readiness\oracle
  - On UNIX: <infamdm\_install\_directory>/server/resource/database/migration\_readiness/oracle
- 3. Select the appropriate option to fix data issues:
  - a. Enter  $\boldsymbol{n}$  for the first option, Check data and generate report (y/n).
  - b. Enter y for the second option, Fix data issues identified by data check and generate report (y/n).
  - c. Enter n for the third option, Regenerate report from previous data check (y/n).

The data issues with a fix type of auto are resolved and a post-fix Readiness report is generated.

- 4. Open the post-fix Readiness report in a program that can open CSV files, such as Excel. Verify that the current count for the data issues with a fix type of auto is 0.
- 5. If the current count for data issues with a fix type of auto is not 0, repeat steps 2 through 4.

# Resolving Manual Mandatory Fix Data Issues

You cannot run a script to fix the issues with a fix type of manual. You must resolve the issues identified in the **Manual Mandatory Fix** section of the readiness report before you upgrade. Contact Informatica Global Customer Support if you need assistance to resolve these issues.

The following check codes identify the data issues that you must fix manually:

## Q\_DSI

The existing column names that conflict with the column names introduced by the upgrade must be changed before you upgrade. Rename any existing column names that conflict with the following column names:

• STG\_ROWID\_TABLE column name in the cross-reference tables

- The S\_, S\_\_, and S\_S\_ prefix for column names in the cross-reference tables
- \_GOV postfix for column names in the cross-reference tables
- ORIG\_ROWID\_OBJECT column name in the cross-reference tables

## XREF\_CUC\_DUPL

Multiple cross-reference records cannot share the same custom unique key value. These issues do not affect the upgrade process.

**Important:** Do not fix cross-reference records that are a result of an edit. Cross-reference records that are the result of an edit have a source of SYSO and a Put\_Update\_Merge\_Ind value of 1.

- Search the latest MI\_I\_<timestamp> temporary data tables identified in the readiness report for records affected by issue XREF\_CUC\_DUPL.
- 2. See the SQL code samples in the MI\_SQL\_SAMPLES table for samples of the SQL code that the readiness script uses to identify XREF\_CUC\_DUPL issues.
- 3. Ensure multiple cross-reference records do not share the same custom unique key value.

## Q\_HM\_NULL

Identifies the relationship base objects and the hierarchy manager columns that have NULL values. Q\_HM\_NULL issues have a fix type of auto, but you must manually fix any Q\_HM\_NULL issues that remain after you run the readiness start.sql script to fix issues.

- Search the latest detailed temporary data tables identified in the readiness report for records affected by issue Q\_HM\_NULL.
- 2. Enter the correct data for the records affected by issue Q\_HM\_NULL.

# **Resolving Manual Fix Warnings**

You cannot run a script to fix the issues identified in the readiness report with a fix type of manual. You do not have to fix the issues identified in the **Manual Warnings** section of the readiness report before you upgrade unless they affect hierarchy manager relationship base objects.

The following check codes identify the data warnings:

## Q\_100\_DEPR

Identifies objects that deprecated tables reference. You can fix Q\_100\_DEPR issues after the upgrade. These issues appear in the Repository Manager validation results until you resolve them.

## **Q\_101\_DEPR**

Identifies the deprecated lookup and relationship combinations. You can fix Q\_101\_DEPR issues after the upgrade. These issues appear in the Repository Manager validation results until you resolve them.

## Q11.5

Identifies child cross-reference records that have a foreign key value that does not exist in the parent cross-reference record. You need to resolve this issue before the upgrade if the issue affects a hierarchy manager relationship base objects. A HM\_IND value of 1 in table MI\_M\_<timestamp> identifies a hierarchy manager relationship base object. Hierarchy manager relationship base objects that issue Q11.5 affects might cause the upgrade to fail. Search the latest MI\_M\_<timestamp> temporary data tables for records that issue Q11.5 affects.

## 019.5

Identifies the HMXR tables that contains extra rows. You can resolve Q19.5 issues before or after the upgrade. You need to resolve this issue before the upgrade if the issue affects a hierarchy manager

relationship base objects. Hierarchy manager relationship base objects that issue Q19.5 affects might cause the upgrade to fail. If the affected tables are relationship tables and the value in the extra row is not valid, the upgrade process fails. Search the latest MI\_R\_<timestamp> temporary data tables for records that issue Q19.5 affects.

## Q5

Identifies the base object records that contain a ROWID\_OBJECT value that does not exist in a cross-reference record. Q5 issues do not affect the upgrade process. You can fix Q5 issues before or after the upgrade. Search the latest MI\_R\_<timestamp> temporary data tables for records that issue Q5 affects.

## Q9

Identifies the cross-reference records that contain a ROWID\_OBJECT value that does not exist in a base object record. You need to resolve this issue before the upgrade if the issue affects a hierarchy manager relationship base objects. Hierarchy manager relationship base objects affected by Q9 might cause the upgrade to fail. Search the latest MI\_R\_<timestamp> temporary data tables for records that issue Q9 affects.

# CHAPTER 3

# **Database Tasks**

This chapter includes the following topics:

- Database Tasks Overview, 35
- Set Up Oracle Database, 35
- Set Up Microsoft SQL Server, 41
- Set Up IBM DB2 Database, 45

# **Database Tasks Overview**

Configure your database to work with Multidomain MDM. Follow the instructions for your database.

When you perform a clean upgrade, perform all the steps for your database as you would for a new installation of Multidomain MDM.

When you perform an in-place upgrade where your database version is still supported, verify that the database is configured to work with this version of Multidomain MDM.

# Set Up Oracle Database

Before you create an MDM Hub Master Database and Operational Reference Store, set up the database environment.

To set up the database environment, perform the following tasks:

- 1. Install and configure Oracle.
- 2. Set up a database instance.
- 3. Set up database privileges and connections.
- 4. Create the ActiveVOS schema.

# Step 1. Install and Configure Oracle

You can install and configure Oracle Database according to the instructions in the Oracle documentation.

The following table describes the Oracle installation and configuration tasks:

| Tasks                         | Description   |
|-------------------------------|---|
| Install Oracle                | Install the supported version of Oracle Database.  Note: If you want to use the Oracle multitenant feature, set up a pluggable database (PDB) for the MDM Hub installation. |
| Install clients and utilities | Install the Oracle client and utilities software to communicate with the MDM Hub, and to run the MDM Hub processes.   |
|                               | On each machine where you want to run the Hub Server or Process Server, install the following software:  Oracle client SQL*Loader   |
| Disable recycle bins          | Disable the recycle bins, USER_RECYCLEBIN and DBA_RECYCLEBIN. Recycle bins can interfere with the MDM Hub processes.  |
|                               | Disable the recycle bins at the system or session level. Also, purge existing objects in the recycle bin.   |
| Set initialization parameters | Configure the Oracle initialization parameters in the init.ora file.  |
|                               | For information about Oracle initialization parameters, see the MDM Multidomain Edition Performance Tuning Guide.   |

For information about installing and configuring Oracle, see the Oracle documentation.

# Step 2. Set Up Database Instances

After you install and configure Oracle Database, create and set up database instances.

The following table describes the tasks that you need to perform to set up a database instance:

| Tasks                            | Description   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Create a<br>database<br>instance | Create a database instance. For an MDM Hub with multiple Operational Reference Stores distributed across different host machines, create a database instance on each host machine.  |
| Create tablespaces               | Create tablespaces for the MDM Hub data. Adjust the default tablespace sizes and the number of data files based on the volume of data that you want to load into the MDM Hub.   |
|                                  | Create the following tablespaces:  - CMX_DATA. Contains the metadata and user data of the MDM Hub.  - CMX_INDX. Contains indexes that the MDM Hub creates and uses.  - CMX_TEMP. Contains temporary tables for Informatica MDM Hub. |

#### **Creating Tablespaces on Premises**

If you use Oracle on premises, create tablespaces as permanent tablespaces that you manage locally or configure manually.

**Note:** Create bigfile tablespaces to simplify database management for large data loads. However, you can create smallfile tablespaces if required.

- 1. Log in to Oracle as a database administrative user such as SYSTEM.
- 2. Create the tablespaces.

The following table contains sample SQL statements to create tablespaces:

| Default<br>Tablespace Name | Sample SQL Statement   |
|----------------------------|--|
| CMX_DATA                   | CREATE BIGFILE TABLESPACE CMX_DATA NOLOGGING DATAFILE ' <oracle directory="" install="">/CMX_DATA1.dbf' SIZE 2048M REUSE EXTENT MANAGEMENT LOCAL;  Do not change the default tablespace name to prevent Repository Manager validation errors.</oracle> |
| CMX_INDX                   | CREATE BIGFILE TABLESPACE CMX_INDX NOLOGGING DATAFILE ' <oracle directory="" install="">/CMX_INDX1.dbf' SIZE 2048M REUSE EXTENT MANAGEMENT LOCAL;</oracle>   |
| CMX_TEMP                   | CREATE BIGFILE TABLESPACE CMX_TEMP NOLOGGING DATAFILE ' <oracle directory="" install="">/CMX_TEMP1.dbf' SIZE 2048M REUSE EXTENT MANAGEMENT LOCAL;</oracle>   |

#### Creating Tablespaces in Amazon Relational Database Service

If you use Amazon Relational Database Service (RDS) for Oracle, create tablespaces as permanent tablespaces in Amazon RDS.

**Note:** Create bigfile tablespaces to simplify database management for large data loads. However, you can create smallfile tablespaces if required.

- 1. Log in to Amazon RDS for Oracle as a database administrative user.
- 2. Create the tablespaces.

The following table contains sample SQL statements to create tablespaces:

| Default Tablespace<br>Name | Sample SQL Statement   |
|----------------------------|--|
| CMX_DATA                   | CREATE BIGFILE TABLESPACE CMX_DATA DATAFILE SIZE 2048M AUTOEXTEND ON NEXT 2048M;           |
|                            | Do not change the default tablespace name to prevent Repository Manager validation errors. |
| CMX_INDX                   | CREATE BIGFILE TABLESPACE CMX_INDX DATAFILE SIZE 2048M AUTOEXTEND ON NEXT 2048M;           |
| CMX_TEMP                   | CREATE BIGFILE TABLESPACE CMX_TEMP DATAFILE SIZE 2048M AUTOEXTEND ON NEXT 2048M;           |

### Configuring the Database Environment for Custom Tablespace Names

If you use a tablespace name other than the default tablespace name for CMX\_INDX or CMX\_TEMP, disable the DEFERRED\_SEGMENT\_CREATION initialization parameter. You disable the parameter to prevent Repository Manager validation errors.

► To disable DEFERRED\_SEGMENT\_CREATION, run the following SQL statement, and restart the database:

ALTER SYSTEM SET DEFERRED\_SEGMENT\_CREATION=FALSE SCOPE=BOTH;

### Step 3. Set Up Database Privileges and Connections

Set up database privileges and connections.

The following table describes the tasks that you need to perform to set up database privileges and connections:

| Tasks  | Description   |
|--|---|
| Grant privileges to the database administrative user | If you want to use a database administrative user to create the MDM Hub Master Database and the Operational Reference Store, grant privileges to the database administrative user. The user must have the privileges to grant options for distributed transactions and DBMS_LOCK. |
|  | To grant privileges to the database administrative user, connect to the database as a user with privileges to grant options, and run the following SQL statements:  |
|  | GRANT SELECT ON sys.pending_trans\$ TO <dba user=""> with grant option; GRANT SELECT ON sys.dba_pending_transactions TO <dba user=""> with grant option;</dba></dba>  |
|  | GRANT SELECT ON sys.dba_2pc_pending TO <dba user=""> with grant option; GRANT EXECUTE ON sys.dbms_xa TO <dba user=""> with grant option; GRANT EXECUTE ON sys.dbms_lock TO <dba user=""> with grant option;</dba></dba></dba>   |
| Add the Oracle TNS name                              | For connections to the Oracle database, add TNS name entries to the tnsnames.ora file on the Hub Server and Process Server machines.  |
|  | To add TNS name entries, use the following syntax:  |
|  | <tns name=""> = (DESCRIPTION = (ADDRESS LIST =</tns>  |
|  | <pre>(ADDRESS = (PROTOCOL = TCP) (Host = <oracle host="" name="" server="">) (Port = <oracle port="" server="">))</oracle></oracle></pre>   |
|  | <pre>(CONNECT_DATA =     (SERVICE_NAME = <oracle sid="">) )</oracle></pre>  |
|  | Note: The TNS names on the Hub Server and Process Server machines must be the same.   |
| Test the database connection                         | Test the connection to the database from each machine on which you want to run the Hub Server or the Process Server.  |
|  | In SQL*Plus, use the following SQL statement syntax: sqlplus <user name="">/<password>@<tns name=""></tns></password></user>  |

### Step 4. Create the ActiveVOS Schema

If you want to install ActiveVOS, you need to create the ActiveVOS database schema. To create the schema, run the  $create\_bpm$  script.

1. Open a command prompt and change to the following directory:

```
<MDM Hub distribution directory>/database/bin
```

2. Run the following command:

```
On UNIX. ./sip_ant.sh create_bpm
On Windows. sip_ant.bat create_bpm
```

3. Answer the prompts that appear.

The prompt displays default text in brackets. Press **Enter** to use the default value and go to the next prompt.

**Note:** IBM DB2 data sources are case-sensitive. To avoid issues related to case-sensitivity, Informatica recommends that you use uppercase letters to define names, such as those for schemas, columns, and triggers.

| Property                               | Description   |
|--|---|
| Database Type                          | Type of database to use. For IBM DB2, specify DB2. The database type must be the same as the database type selected for the MDM Hub Master Database and the Operational Reference Stores. |
| ActiveVOS Database Host Name           | Name of the machine that hosts the database.  |
| ActiveVOS Database TCP/IP Port         | Port number that the database listener uses.  |
| ActiveVOS Database Name                | Name of the database.   |
| ActiveVOS Database Schema/User<br>Name | User name of the ActiveVOS Server administrative user.  |
| ActiveVOS User Password                | Password of the administrative user.  |
| DBA User Name                          | User name of the database administrative user.  |
| DBA Password                           | Password of the administrative user.  |
| ActiveVOS Tablespace Name              | The name of the tablespace that contains the records that are involved in MDM workflows.  |

| Property                                 | Description  |
|--|--|
| Database Type                            | The type of database. For an Oracle database, specify <code>Oracle</code> . The database type must be the same as the database type selected for the MDM Hub Master Database and the Operational Reference Stores. |
| Oracle Connection Type                   | Connection type. Use one of the following values: - SERVICE. Uses the service name to connect to Oracle SID. Uses the Oracle System ID to connect to Oracle.   |
| ActiveVOS Database Host<br>Name          | Name of the machine that hosts the database.   |
| ActiveVOS Database Port                  | Port number that the database listener uses.   |
| Database Service Name                    | Name of the Oracle service. This property is required when the selected Oracle connection type is SERVICE.   |
| Oracle Net Connect Identifier (TNS Name) | Oracle TNS name.   |
| Database SID                             | Name of the Oracle System ID. This property is required when the selected Oracle connection type is SID.   |

| Property                          | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| DBA User Name                     | User name of the database administrative user.   |
| DBA Password                      | Password of the administrative user.   |
| ActiveVOS User Name               | User name of the ActiveVOS Server administrative user.                                   |
| ActiveVOS User Password           | Password of the administrative user.   |
| ActiveVOS User Tablespace         | The name of the tablespace that contains the records that are involved in MDM workflows. |
| ActiveVOS User Temp<br>Tablespace | The name of the temporary tablespace.  |

| Property                        | Description  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Database Type                   | Type of database to use. For Microsoft SQL Server, specify MSSQL. The database type must be the same as the database type selected for the MDM Hub Master Database and the Operational Reference Stores. |
| ActiveVOS User Name             | User name of the ActiveVOS Server administrative user.   |
| ActiveVOS User Password         | Password of the administrative user.   |
| ActiveVOS Collation Name        | Name of the ActiveVOS database collation. For example, Latin1_General_CI_AS.   |
| ActiveVOS Database Host<br>Name | Name of the machine that hosts the database.   |
| ActiveVOS Database Path         | Path to the database location.   |
| DBA User Name                   | User name of the SA user.  |
| DBA Password                    | Password of the SA user account.   |

4. After you create the schema, review the  $sip\_ant.log$  file in the following directory:

<MDM Hub distribution directory>/database/bin

The  $sip\_ant.log$  file logs any errors that might occur when you run the  $sip\_ant$  script to create the ActiveVOS database schema.

# Set Up Microsoft SQL Server

Before you create an MDM Hub Master Database and Operational Reference Store, set up the database environment.

To set up the database environment, perform the following tasks:

1. Install and configure Microsoft SQL Server.

- 2. Create a data file store.
- 3. Install ODBC driver.
- 4. Create the ActiveVOS schema.

### Step 1. Install and Configure Microsoft SQL Server

You can install and configure Microsoft SQL Server according to the instructions in the Microsoft SQL Server documentation.

The following table describes the Microsoft SQL Server installation and configuration tasks:

| Tasks                              | Description   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| Install Microsoft SQL<br>Server    | Install the supported version of Microsoft SQL Server.  Note: Ensure that you specify mixed mode as the database engine authentication security mode.         |
| Configure distributed transactions | Configure Microsoft SQL Server for distributed transactions because the MDM Hub requires a distributed transactions environment.                              |
|                                    | To configure Microsoft SQL Server for distributed transactions, enable MS DTC for XA transactions, and configure the JDBC distributed transactions component. |
| Enable the TCP/IP network protocol | Configure Microsoft SQL Server to use the TCP/IP network protocol that the MDM Hub environment requires.  |

#### Configuring Microsoft SQL Server for Distributed Transactions

Before you start Microsoft SQL Server, ensure that you configure it for distributed transactions. The MDM Hub requires a distributed transaction environment.

- 1. To ensure that the Microsoft Distributed Transaction Coordinator (MS DTC) service starts when you start Microsoft SQL Server, mark MS DTC as Automatic in the Service Manager.
- 2. Enable MS DTC for XA transactions.
- 3. Enable MS DTC for SNA LU 6.2 transactions.
- 4. Configure the JDBC distributed transactions component.
  - Download and extract the Microsoft SQL Server JDBC driver from the Microsoft website to a directory on the machine.
  - b. Copy the sqljdbc\_xa.dll file to the Binn directory of the machine on which Microsoft SQL Server is installed.
  - c. Run the  $xa_{install.sql}$  script on the Microsoft SQL Server instance as an administrator. The  $xa_{install.sql}$  script is in the xa directory of the JDBC driver.
  - d. Verify that the script creates the SqIJDBCXAUser role in the Microsoft SQL Server master database.

For more information about how to install and configure Microsoft SQL Server for distributed transactions, see the Microsoft SQL Server documentation.

#### Enabling the TCP/IP Network Protocol

Use SQL Server Configuration Manager to enable the TCP/IP network protocol, which the MDM Hub environment requires.

- 1. Start the SQL Server Configuration Manager.
- In the console pane, expand SQL Server Network Configuration, and then click Protocols for MSSQLSERVER.
- In the details pane, right-click TCP/IP, and then click Enable.
- 4. Restart the SQL Server service.

The TCP/IP network protocol is enabled.

### Step 2. Create a Microsoft SQL Server Data File Store

Ensure that you create a Microsoft SQL Server data file store if one does not exist. When you create the MDM Hub Master Database and the Operational Reference Stores, you need to provide the path to the Microsoft SQL Server data file store.

### Step 3. Install ODBC Driver

If you install the application server on UNIX or Linux, install an ODBC driver for Microsoft SQL Server so that data sources can be created.

- Download and install the ODBC driver for the operating system.
  - On Linux. Download the Microsoft SQL Server ODBC driver from the Microsoft website.
  - On UNIX. Download the UNIX ODBC driver from the unixODBC Project home page.

### Step 4. Create the ActiveVOS Schema

If you want to install ActiveVOS, you need to create the ActiveVOS database schema. To create the schema, run the <code>create\_bpm script</code>.

1. Open a command prompt and change to the following directory:

```
<MDM Hub distribution directory>/database/bin
```

2. Run the following command:

```
On UNIX. ./sip_ant.sh create_bpm
On Windows. sip_ant.bat create_bpm
```

3. Answer the prompts that appear.

The prompt displays default text in brackets. Press **Enter** to use the default value and go to the next prompt.

**Note:** IBM DB2 data sources are case-sensitive. To avoid issues related to case-sensitivity, Informatica recommends that you use uppercase letters to define names, such as those for schemas, columns, and triggers.

| Property                               | Description   |
|--|---|
| Database Type                          | Type of database to use. For IBM DB2, specify DB2. The database type must be the same as the database type selected for the MDM Hub Master Database and the Operational Reference Stores. |
| ActiveVOS Database Host Name           | Name of the machine that hosts the database.  |
| ActiveVOS Database TCP/IP Port         | Port number that the database listener uses.  |
| ActiveVOS Database Name                | Name of the database.   |
| ActiveVOS Database Schema/User<br>Name | User name of the ActiveVOS Server administrative user.  |
| ActiveVOS User Password                | Password of the administrative user.  |
| DBA User Name                          | User name of the database administrative user.  |
| DBA Password                           | Password of the administrative user.  |
| ActiveVOS Tablespace Name              | The name of the tablespace that contains the records that are involved in MDM workflows.  |

| Property                                 | Description  |
|--|--|
| Database Type                            | The type of database. For an Oracle database, specify Oracle. The database type must be the same as the database type selected for the MDM Hub Master Database and the Operational Reference Stores. |
| Oracle Connection Type                   | Connection type. Use one of the following values: - SERVICE. Uses the service name to connect to Oracle SID. Uses the Oracle System ID to connect to Oracle.   |
| ActiveVOS Database Host<br>Name          | Name of the machine that hosts the database.   |
| ActiveVOS Database Port                  | Port number that the database listener uses.   |
| Database Service Name                    | Name of the Oracle service. This property is required when the selected Oracle connection type is SERVICE.   |
| Oracle Net Connect Identifier (TNS Name) | Oracle TNS name.   |
| Database SID                             | Name of the Oracle System ID. This property is required when the selected Oracle connection type is SID.   |
| DBA User Name                            | User name of the database administrative user.   |

| Property                          | Description  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| DBA Password                      | Password of the administrative user.   |
| ActiveVOS User Name               | User name of the ActiveVOS Server administrative user.                                   |
| ActiveVOS User Password           | Password of the administrative user.   |
| ActiveVOS User Tablespace         | The name of the tablespace that contains the records that are involved in MDM workflows. |
| ActiveVOS User Temp<br>Tablespace | The name of the temporary tablespace.  |

| Property                        | Description  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| Database Type                   | Type of database to use. For Microsoft SQL Server, specify MSSQL. The database type must be the same as the database type selected for the MDM Hub Master Database and the Operational Reference Stores. |
| ActiveVOS User Name             | User name of the ActiveVOS Server administrative user.   |
| ActiveVOS User Password         | Password of the administrative user.   |
| ActiveVOS Collation Name        | Name of the ActiveVOS database collation. For example, Latin1_General_CI_AS.   |
| ActiveVOS Database Host<br>Name | Name of the machine that hosts the database.   |
| ActiveVOS Database Path         | Path to the database location.   |
| DBA User Name                   | User name of the SA user.  |
| DBA Password                    | Password of the SA user account.   |

4. After you create the schema, review the sip\_ant.log file in the following directory:

<MDM Hub distribution directory>/database/bin

The  $sip\_ant.log$  file logs any errors that might occur when you run the  $sip\_ant$  script to create the ActiveVOS database schema.

# Set Up IBM DB2 Database

Before you create an MDM Hub Master Database and Operational Reference Store, set up the database environment.

To set up the database environment, perform the following tasks:

- 1. Install and configure IBM DB2.
- 2. Create a database and tablespaces.

- 3. Bind packages on the database server.
- 4. Create the ActiveVOS schema.

### Step 1. Install and Configure IBM DB2

You can install and configure IBM DB2 according to the instructions in the IBM DB2 documentation.

The following table describes the IBM DB2 installation and configuration tasks:

| Tasks                              | Description  |  |  |
|------------------------------------|--|--|--|
| Install IBM DB2                    | Install the supported version of IBM DB2.  |  |  |
| Install clients and utilities      | Install the IBM DB2 client and utilities software to communicate with the MDM Hub and run the MDM Hub processes.  On each machine where you want to run the Hub Server or Process Server, install the following software:  - DB2 client  - DB2 Java utilities for the DB2 client  Ensure that you catalog the IBM DB2 database from each DB2 client. |  |  |
| Configure IBM DB2<br>drivers       | To configure IBM DB2 drivers, copy the db2jcc.jar and db2jcc_license_cu.jar driver files from the source to the target directory:  Source: <ibm db2="" directory="" installation="">/java  Target: <mdm directory="" distribution="" hub="">/database/lib</mdm></ibm>  |  |  |
| Create the MDM<br>Hub schema users | Create users to access the following MDM Hub schemas: - MDM Hub Master Databases - Operational Reference Stores  |  |  |

### Step 2. Create a Database and Tablespaces

After you install and configure IBM DB2, create and configure a database and tablespaces.

The following table describes the tablespaces that you require for the MDM Hub schemas:

| Tablespace Name | Description  |
|-----------------|--|
| CMX_DATA        | Default tablespace for the Operational Reference Store schema. Contains the metadata and user data of the MDM Hub. |
| CMX_INDX        | Tablespace to contain indexes that the MDM Hub creates and uses.   |
| CMX_TEMP        | Tablespace to contain temporary tables that the MDM Hub creates and uses.  |
| CMX_REPOS       | Tablespace to contain the Operational Reference Store objects.   |
| CMX_USER_TEMP   | Temporary tablespace to contain operational temporary tables.  |
| CMX_SYS_TEMP    | Temporary tablespace for SQL operations.   |

Use one of the following procedures to create a database and tablespaces:

• Manually create the database and tablespaces

• Use a script to create the database and tablespaces

#### Manually Create a Database and Tablespaces

You can manually create a database and tablespaces. Ensure that you create the database with the compatibility vector turned on and with the UTF-8 TERRITORY US locale.

Set the DB2 Environment and DB2 Registry Variables

If you create the database manually, set the DB2 environment and DB2 registry variables that the MDM Hub requires.

Use the following commands to set the DB2 environment and DB2 registry variables:

```
db2set DB2CODEPAGE=1208
db2set DB2_COMPATIBILITY_VECTOR=
db2set DB2_DEFERRED_PREPARE_SEMANTICS=YES
db2set DB2_RESTORE_GRANT_ADMIN_AUTHORITIES=ON
db2set DB2_HASH_JOIN=YES
db2set DB2_ANTIJOIN=YES
db2set DB2_INLIST_TO_NLJN=NO
db2set DB2_SELECTIVITY=ALL
db2set DB2_SKIPINSERTED=YES
db2set DB2_SKIPINSERTED=YES
db2set DB2_SKIPDELETED=YES
db2set DB2_EXTENDED_OPTIMIZATION=ON,ENHANCED_MULTIPLE_DISTINCT,IXOR,SNHD
db2set DB2_REDUCED_OPTIMIZATION=REDUCE_LOCKING
```

Set the Database Manager Configuration for the Database Instance

You need to optimize the database manager configuration for the database instance.

Use the following commands to optimize the database manager configuration:

```
db2 update dbm cfg using MON_HEAP_SZ AUTOMATIC db2 update dbm cfg using JAVA_HEAP_SZ 2048 db2 update dbm cfg using AGENT_STACK_SZ 256 db2 update dbm cfg using SHEAPTHRES \overline{0} db2 update dbm cfg using INTRA PARALLEL YES
```

Note: The values specified in the commands are minimum requirements for the MDM Hub.

Set Database Configuration Parameters

Set the configuration parameters for the database.

Use the following commands to set the database configuration parameters:

```
db2 update db cfg using LOCKLIST AUTOMATIC
db2 update db cfg using MAXLOCKS AUTOMATIC
db2 update db cfg using PCKCACHESZ 128000
db2 update db cfg using DBHEAP AUTOMATIC
db2 update db cfg using CATALOGCACHE SZ 25000
db2 update db cfg using LOGBUFSZ 409\overline{6}
db2 update db cfg using UTIL HEAP SZ 50000
db2 update db cfg using BUFFPAGE 250
db2 update db cfg using STMTHEAP AUTOMATIC
db2 update db cfg using APPLHEAPSZ AUTOMATIC
db2 update db cfg using APPL_MEMORY AUTOMATIC
db2 update db cfg using STAT HEAP SZ AUTOMATIC
db2 update db cfg using LOGFILSIZ 128000
db2 update db cfg using LOGPRIMARY 10
db2 update db cfg using LOGSECOND 200
db2 update db cfg using auto_reval deferred_force
db2 update db cfg using decflt rounding round half up
db2 update db cfg using SHEAPTHRES SHR AUTOMATIC
db2 update db cfg using DFT_DEGREE 1
```

Note: The values specified in the commands are minimum requirements for the MDM Hub.

#### Grant Privileges to SYSIBMADM Modules

You must grant privileges to UTL\_DIR, UTL\_FILE, and DBMS\_SQL SYSIBMADM modules.

Use the following commands to grant privileges to modules:

```
GRANT EXECUTE ON MODULE SYSIBMADM.UTL_DIR TO PUBLIC WITH GRANT OPTION GRANT EXECUTE ON MODULE SYSIBMADM.UTL_FILE TO PUBLIC WITH GRANT OPTION GRANT EXECUTE ON MODULE SYSIBMADM.DBMS SQL TO PUBLIC WITH GRANT OPTION
```

#### Define Buffer Pools for the Database Manager

Define the REPOS\_POOL and CMX\_POOL buffer pools.

Use the following commands to define buffer pools:

```
CREATE BUFFERPOOL REPOS_POOL IMMEDIATE SIZE 1500 PAGESIZE 32 K CREATE BUFFERPOOL CMX POOL IMMEDIATE SIZE 3000 PAGESIZE 32 K
```

#### Create Tablespaces

You need to create tablespaces that the MDM Hub schemas require.

Create the tablespaces in the following sequence:

- 1. CMX\_DATA
- 2. CMX\_INDX
- 3. CMX REPOS
- 4. CMX\_TEMP
- 5. CMX\_USER\_TEMP
- 6. CMX\_SYS\_TEMP

Use the following statements to create tablespaces for the MDM Hub schemas:

```
CREATE TABLESPACE CMX DATA PAGESIZE 32 K
    MANAGED BY DATABASE USING (FILE 'c:\dbhub9x\CMX DATA\cmx data01.dat' 500 M)
    EXTENTSIZE 16
   AUTORESIZE YES
    OVERHEAD 10.5
    PREFETCHSIZE 16
    BUFFERPOOL CMX POOL
CREATE TABLESPACE CMX INDX PAGESIZE 32 K
    MANAGED BY DATABASE USING (FILE 'c:\dbhub9x\CMX_INDX\cmx_indx01.dat' 500 M)
    EXTENTSIZE 16
    AUTORESIZE YES
    OVERHEAD 10.5
    PREFETCHSIZE 16
    BUFFERPOOL CMX POOL
CREATE TABLESPACE CMX REPOS PAGESIZE 32 K
    MANAGED BY DATABASE USING ( FILE 'c:\dbhub9x\CMX REPOS\cmx repos01.dat' 500 M )
    EXTENTSIZE 16
    AUTORESIZE YES
    OVERHEAD 10.5
    PREFETCHSIZE 16
    BUFFERPOOL REPOS POOL
CREATE TABLESPACE CMX TEMP PAGESIZE 32 K
    MANAGED BY DATABASE USING ( FILE 'c:\dbhub9x\CMX TEMP\cmx temp01.dat' 500 M )
    EXTENTSIZE 16
    AUTORESIZE YES
    OVERHEAD 10.5
    PREFETCHSIZE 16
    BUFFERPOOL CMX POOL
CREATE USER TEMPORARY TABLESPACE CMX_USER_TEMP PAGESIZE 32 K MANAGED BY DATABASE USING ( FILE 'c:\dbhub9x\USER_TEMP\cmx_user_temp01.dat' 500 M )
    EXTENTSIZE 16
```

```
AUTORESIZE YES
OVERHEAD 10.5
PREFETCHSIZE 16
BUFFERPOOL CMX_POOL

CREATE SYSTEM TEMPORARY TABLESPACE CMX_SYS_TEMP PAGESIZE 32 K
MANAGED BY DATABASE USING (FILE 'c:\dbhub9x\SYSTEM_TEMP\cmx_sys_temp01.dat' 500 M)
EXTENTSIZE 16
AUTORESIZE YES
OVERHEAD 10.5
PREFETCHSIZE 16
BUFFERPOOL CMX POOL
```

Optionally, to create tablespaces with the dropped table recovery feature enabled, add the following clause to the CREATE TABLESPACE statement:

```
DROPPED TABLE RECOVERY ON
```

#### Use a Script to Create a Database and Tablespaces

The MDM Hub distribution includes a script to create the database and associated tablespaces. To run the script, you need administrative privileges with write and execute permissions to the DB2 data directory.

On UNIX, before you create the database, update the db2.storage.path property in the database.properties file with the correct database storage path. The database.properties file is in the following directory:

<MDM Hub distribution directory>/database/bin/db2

1. Open a command prompt, and change to the following directory:

```
<MDM Hub distribution directory>/database/bin
```

2. To create the database, run the following command:

```
On UNIX../sip_ant.sh create_db
On Windows.sip ant.bat create db
```

3. Answer the prompts described in the following table:

| Prompt  | Description  |  |
|---|--|--|
| Enter the database type (ORACLE, MSSQL, DB2)  | Database type. Specify DB2.  |  |
| Enter the database instance name [db2]        | Name of the database instance. Default is db2.   |  |
| Enter the database name [SIP97]               | Name of the database. Default is SIP97.  |  |
| Enter the database storage path [C: \DB2DATA] | Path to the directory where the database must be stored. Default is ${\tt C:}$ \DB2DATA.   |  |
|   | <b>Note:</b> On UNIX, accept the default value. The database storage path that you specify in the database.properties file will be used. |  |

| Prompt                             | Description  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Enter the DBA user name [DB2ADMIN] | User name of the administrative user. Default is DB2ADMIN. |
| Enter the DBA password             | Password of the administrative user.                       |

The script creates the database and the following tablespaces:

- CMX\_DATA
- CMX\_INDX
- CMX\_TEMP
- CMX\_REPOS
- CMX\_USER\_TEMP
- CMX\_SYS\_TEMP

To verify that the database was created successfully, review the sip\_ant.log file in the <MDM Hub distribution directory>/database/bin directory.

### Step 3. Bind Packages on the Database Server

To ensure that the IBM DB2 client can connect to the database server to run DB2 commands, bind packages on the database server.

1. Open an IBM DB2 command window, and change to the following directory:

```
<IBM DB2 installation directory>/SQLLIB/bnd
```

2. Connect to the database by running the following command:

db2 connect to <database name> user <database user> using <database user password>

**Note:** The database user must have the bind permission.

3. Run the following bind command:

db2 bind @db2cli.lst blocking all grant public sqlerror continue CLIPKG 10

The required packages are bound to the database server.

### Step 4. Create the ActiveVOS Schema

If you want to install ActiveVOS, you need to create the ActiveVOS database schema. To create the schema, run the create bpm script.

1. Open a command prompt and change to the following directory:

<MDM Hub distribution directory>/database/bin

2. Run the following command:

On UNIX. ./sip\_ant.sh create\_bpm
On Windows. sip ant.bat create bpm

3. Answer the prompts that appear.

The prompt displays default text in brackets. Press **Enter** to use the default value and go to the next prompt.

**Note:** IBM DB2 data sources are case-sensitive. To avoid issues related to case-sensitivity, Informatica recommends that you use uppercase letters to define names, such as those for schemas, columns, and triggers.

| Property                               | Description   |
|--|---|
| Database Type                          | Type of database to use. For IBM DB2, specify DB2. The database type must be the same as the database type selected for the MDM Hub Master Database and the Operational Reference Stores. |
| ActiveVOS Database Host Name           | Name of the machine that hosts the database.  |
| ActiveVOS Database TCP/IP Port         | Port number that the database listener uses.  |
| ActiveVOS Database Name                | Name of the database.   |
| ActiveVOS Database Schema/User<br>Name | User name of the ActiveVOS Server administrative user.  |
| ActiveVOS User Password                | Password of the administrative user.  |
| DBA User Name                          | User name of the database administrative user.  |
| DBA Password                           | Password of the administrative user.  |
| ActiveVOS Tablespace Name              | The name of the tablespace that contains the records that are involved in MDM workflows.  |

| Property                                 | Description  |  |
|--|--|--|
| Database Type                            | The type of database. For an Oracle database, specify Oracle. The database type must be the same as the database type selected for the MDM Hub Master Database and the Operational Reference Stores. |  |
| Oracle Connection Type                   | Connection type. Use one of the following values: - SERVICE. Uses the service name to connect to Oracle SID. Uses the Oracle System ID to connect to Oracle.   |  |
| ActiveVOS Database Host<br>Name          | Name of the machine that hosts the database.   |  |
| ActiveVOS Database Port                  | Port number that the database listener uses.   |  |
| Database Service Name                    | Name of the Oracle service. This property is required when the selected Oracle connection type is SERVICE.   |  |
| Oracle Net Connect Identifier (TNS Name) | Oracle TNS name.   |  |
| Database SID                             | Name of the Oracle System ID. This property is required when the selected Oracle connection type is SID.   |  |
| DBA User Name                            | User name of the database administrative user.   |  |

| Property                          | Description  |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|--|
| DBA Password                      | Password of the administrative user.   |  |
| ActiveVOS User Name               | User name of the ActiveVOS Server administrative user.                                   |  |
| ActiveVOS User Password           | Password of the administrative user.   |  |
| ActiveVOS User Tablespace         | The name of the tablespace that contains the records that are involved in MDM workflows. |  |
| ActiveVOS User Temp<br>Tablespace | The name of the temporary tablespace.  |  |

| Property                        | Description  |  |
|---------------------------------|--|--|
| Database Type                   | Type of database to use. For Microsoft SQL Server, specify MSSQL. The database type must be the same as the database type selected for the MDM Hub Master Database and the Operational Reference Stores. |  |
| ActiveVOS User Name             | User name of the ActiveVOS Server administrative user.   |  |
| ActiveVOS User Password         | Password of the administrative user.   |  |
| ActiveVOS Collation Name        | Name of the ActiveVOS database collation.  |  |
|                                 | For example, Latin1_General_CI_AS.   |  |
| ActiveVOS Database Host<br>Name | Name of the machine that hosts the database.   |  |
| ActiveVOS Database Path         | Path to the database location.   |  |
| DBA User Name                   | User name of the SA user.  |  |
| DBA Password                    | Password of the SA user account.   |  |

4. After you create the schema, review the  $sip\_ant.log$  file in the following directory:

<MDM Hub distribution directory>/database/bin

The  $sip\_ant.log$  file logs any errors that might occur when you run the  $sip\_ant$  script to create the ActiveVOS database schema.

### CHAPTER 4

# **Application Server Tasks**

This chapter includes the following topics:

- Application Server Tasks Overview, 53
- Set Up JBoss, 53
- Set Up Oracle WebLogic, 59
- Additional Oracle WebLogic Configuration, 63
- Set Up IBM WebSphere, 67
- Additional IBM WebSphere Configuration, 72

# **Application Server Tasks Overview**

Configure your application server to work with Multidomain MDM. Follow the instructions for your application server.

When you perform a clean upgrade, perform all the steps for your application server as you would for a new installation of Multidomain MDM.

When you perform an in-place upgrade where your application server is still supported, verify that the application server is configured to work with this version of Multidomain MDM.

## Set Up JBoss

You can install the MDM Hub in a JBoss cluster environment or on standalone JBoss instances. Install and configure JBoss according to the instructions in the JBoss documentation. Whether you install the MDM Hub in a JBoss cluster environment or on standalone JBoss instances, install the JBoss standalone configuration, and use the full profile of the configuration.

A JBoss cluster consists of one or more cluster nodes on one or more machines. Install and configure JBoss on all machines on which you want cluster nodes. In a cluster environment, ensure that the directory structure of the JBoss installations is the same on all the cluster nodes.

**Note:** Install the application server in the same time zone as the database server.

### **Configure Java Virtual Machines**

To configure a Java Virtual Machine (JVM), set Java options by using the JAVA\_OPTS environment variable.

You can set the Java options in the following file:

On UNIX. <JBoss installation directory>/bin/standalone.conf

On Windows. 
On Windows

Jbin
standalone
.conf.bat

The following table describes the Java options settings:

| Java Options  | Description   |
|---|---|
| -server   | Results in a slower startup but subsequent operations are faster.   |
| -Ddb2.jcc.charsetDecoderEncoder   | Required to use the MDM Hub Sample Operational Reference Store. Enables the JDBC driver to return the Unicode replacement character (U+FFFD) in place of a sequence of bytes that is not a UTF-8 string. Set to 3.  |
| -Djava.net.preferIPv4Stack  | Specifies whether Java uses Internet Protocol version 4 (IPv4). If the operating system uses Internet Protocol version 6 (IPv6), set to true.   |
| -Djboss.as.management.blocking.timeout  | Time in seconds to wait for JBoss to deploy. To ensure that JBoss does not fail to start, you can set the value to 5000. Adjust the time period based on your environment. Default is 300.  |
|   | If you do not configure the parameter, you might encounter a JBoss deployment timeout.  |
| -Djavax.net.ssl.trustStore= <security certificate="" file="" key="" path=""> -Djavax.net.ssl.trustStorePassword=<keystore password="">"</keystore></security> | Imports the security certificate.  Required if you want to configure the HTTPS protocol for the MDM Hub communications and for the ActiveVOS communications with the MDM Hub.  Before you configure the property, use the Java keytool command to generate a keystore and an alias. If you use a certificate chain, the alias of the end-user certificate must be the same as the application server host name. |
| -Djgroups.bind_addr   | Interface on which JGroup must receive and send messages.  Required in multinode or cluster environments. Ensure that each node binds to its own network interface.   |
| -DFrameworksLogConfigurationPath  | Path to the log4j.xml file.   |
| -Dmdm.node.groupid  | Specifies a group ID for Java Virtual Machines in<br>the MDM Hub implementation. Required only if you<br>want logical groupings of Hub Servers and Process<br>Servers.  |

| Java Options  | Description  |
|---|--|
| -Dfile.encoding<br>-Dorg.apache.catalina.connector.URI_ENCODING | Required if you want to use Informatica Data<br>Director and use REST APIs to search for records.<br>Set to UTF-8 to ensure that you can find and save<br>records that contain UTF-8 characters. |
| -Dorg.apache.coyote.http11.Http11Protocol.MAX_HEADER_SIZE       | Maximum size of the HTTP headers, in bytes. The smart search requests might fail if the header size is low. Set to 16384.  |
| -Dtask.pageSize= <maximum number="" of="" tasks=""></maximum>   | Specifies the maximum number of ActiveVOS tasks that are retrieved for each request. Default is 5000. Increase the number if your environment has a large number of tasks.                       |
| -Dstricttransportsecurity.flag                                  | Specifies whether web browsers must convert all attempts to access Informatica Data Director using the HTTP requests to the HTTPS requests instead. Set to true.                                 |
| -Xms  | Initial heap size. Set to 2048m.   |
| -Xmx  | Maximum JVM heap size. Set to 4 GB or higher.  For example, to set the -Xmx to 4096m, use the following JAVA_OPTIONS environment variable setting:  set "JAVA_OPTIONS=-serverXmx4096m"           |
| XX:+UseCodeCacheFlushing  | Specifies whether the JVM disposes of compiled code when the code cache is full.   |
| -XX:ReservedCodeCacheSize                                       | JIT code cache size. To enhance the performance of the MDM Hub environment, set to 512m.   |

#### Logical Grouping of Java Virtual Machine Example

By grouping Java Virtual Machines (JVMs), you get a logical group of Hub Servers and Process Servers. When you deploy the Hub Server and Process Server applications in a logical JVM group, all communication between the applications stays within the group. To group JVMs, you assign a group ID to each JVM in the MDM Hub environment.

**Note:** Process Server grouping is applicable to the cleanse and match process only. A Process Server that is enabled as a Zookeeper server and is enabled for smart search is available to all the groups for indexing and search processing.

The following table shows an example of logical JVM groups:

| JVM Group | JVM  | Hub Server | Process Server |
|-----------|------|------------|----------------|
| Group1    | JVM1 | Yes        | Yes            |
| Group1    | JVM4 | -          | Yes            |

| JVM Group | JVM  | Hub Server | Process Server |
|-----------|------|------------|----------------|
| Group2    | JVM2 | Yes        | Yes            |
| Group3    | JVM3 | -          | Yes            |

For JVM1, add the following Java option in the startup script:

-Dmdm.node.groupid=Group1

For JVM2, add the following Java option in the startup script:

-Dmdm.node.groupid=Group2

For JVM3, add the following Java option in the startup script:

-Dmdm.node.groupid=Group3

For JVM4, add the following Java option in the startup script:

-Dmdm.node.groupid=Group1

After you configure the JVMs, and deploy the Hub Servers and Process Servers, the groups have the following characteristics:

- Group1 has two Process Servers, Group2 has one Process Server, and Group3 has one Process Server.
- All cleanse and batch calls stay in their own group with the exception of smart search. For example, any
  real-time call on the Hub Server in Group1 affects only the Group1 Process Servers (JVM1 and JVM4).

### Configure Server Properties for the Full Profile

Configure the server properties for the full profile of the standalone mode in the standalone-full.xml file.

The standalone-full.xml file is in the following directory:

<JBoss installation directory>/standalone/configuration

The following table describes the server properties configuration for the full profile:

| Configuration       | Description  |
|---------------------|--|
| Transaction timeout | Ensures that the MDM Hub transactions complete. In the subsystem with the name urn:jboss:domain:transactions: <n.n>, set default-timeout=3600 for the coordinator-environment element.</n.n>   |
| HTTPS protocol      | Required if you want to configure the HTTPS protocol for the MDM Hub communications and for ActiveVOS communications with the MDM Hub.  Note: Before you configure the HTTPS protocol, use the Java keytool command to generate a keystore and an alias. Note the key alias and keystore password that you create. |
|                     | To configure the HTTPS protocol, in the subsystem with the name urn:jboss:domain:web: <n.n>, add the following connector configuration:</n.n>  |
|                     | <pre><connector name="https" protocol="HTTP/1.1" scheme="https" socket-<br="">binding="https" secure="true"&gt;</connector></pre>  |

| Configuration                               | Description   |
|---|---|
| HornetQ Security                            | If HornetQ security is enabled for the JBoss server, disable it. In the hornetq-server element, set the security-enabled configuration to false as shown in the following example:  |
|   | <pre><security-enabled>false</security-enabled></pre>   |
| Remoting-<br>connector security             | Configures remoting-connector security.   |
| connector security                          | To log in to the Hub Console from a remote machine, disable the remoting-connector security. In the subsystem with the name urn:jboss:domain:remoting: <n.n>, remove the security-realm attribute from the following connector configuration:</n.n> |
|   | <pre><connector name="remoting-connector" name"="" realm="" security-="" socket-binding="remoting">/&gt;</connector></pre>  |
| Asynchronous<br>handling of                 | If the JBoss environment runs on Java 1.7, and you want to use Informatica Data Director, configure asynchronous handling of loggers.   |
| loggers                                     | In the subsystem with the name urn:jboss:domain:logging: <n.n>, add the following async-handler configuration:</n.n>  |
|   | <async-handler name="ASYNC"></async-handler>  |
|   | Also, add the <handler name="ASYNC"></handler> element to the root-logger configuration.  |
| Port configuration for JBoss                | If you want to install multiple MDM Hub instances on the same machine, you deploy each MDM Hub instance on a separate JBoss instance.   |
| instances                                   | To avoid port conflicts, for each JBoss instance, set the port-offset attribute of the socket-binding-group element to a different value.   |
| Access to the<br>JBoss root<br>welcome page | Disable access to the JBoss root welcome page. For instructions, see the JBoss documentation.   |

### Create the ActiveVOS Console Administrative User

If you want to use ActiveVOS, create the ActiveVOS Console administrative user with the <code>abAdmin</code> role in the application server container. If you want to use ActiveVOS, create the ActiveVOS Console administrative user with the <code>abAdmin</code> role. If you do not create an administrative user, the Hub Server deployment fails. Use the ActiveVOS Console administrative user name and password when the Hub Server installer prompts you to enter the administrative user credentials for the ActiveVOS Console.

1. Change to the following directory:

```
<JBoss installation directory>/bin
```

2. To run the add-user utility, use the following script:

```
On UNIX. add-user.sh
On Windows. add-user.bat
```

3. Answer the prompts that appear.

The following table describes the values to specify for each prompt:

| Prompt  | Value to Specify  |
|---|---|
| What type of user do you wish to add? a) Management User or b) Application User             | To select Application User, enter b.  |
| Realm (ApplicationRealm)  | Realm name. Enter the realm name that you specified in the login-module that you added to the standalone-full.xml file. |
| Username  | ActiveVOS Console administrator name.   |
| Password  | Password that complies with the JBoss password standard.  |
| What roles do you want this user to belong to?  | abAdmin.  |
| About to add user <user name=""> for realm <realm name="">. Is this correct?</realm></user> | To add the user, enter yes.   |
| Is this new user going to be used for one AS process to connect to another AS process?      | yes.  |

4. Log in to the WebSphere console, and create the ActiveVOS Console administrative user.

Note: The ActiveVOS console user is mapped to the abAdmin role when you run the postInstallSetup or the patchInstallSetup script during the post-installation or post-upgrade process.

- 5. Log in to the WebLogic console.
- 6. Create the abAdmin role.
- 7. Create the ActiveVOS Console administrative user.
- 8. Assign the administrative user to the abAdmin role

#### Start JBoss

Before you install the Hub Server and the Process Server, start the JBoss application server. Based on your environment, you either start standalone JBoss instances or JBoss cluster nodes.

#### Starting Standalone JBoss Instances

If you use standalone JBoss instances, start each instance on which you want to install the MDM Hub components.

1. Navigate to the following directory:

```
<JBoss installation directory>/bin
```

2. To start a JBoss instance, run the following command:

```
On UNIX. standalone.sh -c standalone-full.xml -b 0.0.0.0 - Djboss.as.management.blocking.timeout=5000

On Windows. standalone.bat -c standalone-full.xml -b 0.0.0.0 - Djboss.as.management.blocking.timeout=5000
```

JBoss starts on the available network interfaces and listens for the current host that is defined in the hosts file in the /etc/hosts directory. Adjust the timeout interval based on your environment.

3. If you have multiple JBoss instances on the same machine, to start the second and any subsequent JBoss instances, add the following argument to the startup command:

```
-Djboss.service.binding.set=ports-01
```

#### Starting JBoss Cluster Nodes

If you use a JBoss cluster environment, start the cluster nodes on which you want to install the MDM Hub components.

1. Navigate to the following directory:

```
<JBoss installation directory>/bin
```

2. To start a JBoss cluster node, run the following command on machines that have cluster nodes:

```
On UNIX. standalone.sh -c standalone-full.xml -b 0.0.0.0 -Djboss.node.name=<Name of the cluster node> -Djboss.server.base.dir=../<node path> -
Djboss.as.management.blocking.timeout=5000 -u <multicast address> -
Djgroups.bind_addr=<bind address> -Djboss.socket.binding.port-offset=<port offset value> -Djboss.partition.name=<Partition name>
```

```
On Windows. standalone.bat -c standalone-full.xml -b 0.0.0.0 -Djboss.node.name=<Name of the cluster node> -Djboss.server.base.dir=../<node path> -
Djboss.as.management.blocking.timeout=5000 -u <multicast address> -
Djgroups.bind_addr=<bind address> -Djboss.socket.binding.port-offset=<port offset value> -Djboss.partition.name=<Partition name>
```

Set the port offset value if multiple cluster nodes run on the same machine. Use the default partition name or ensure that the partition name is the same for all nodes that belong to a cluster. Adjust the timeout interval based on your environment.

# Set Up Oracle WebLogic

You can install the MDM Hub in an Oracle WebLogic cluster environment or on standalone WebLogic instances. Install and configure WebLogic according to the instructions in the WebLogic documentation.

**Important:** There are some known limitations with how Multidomain MDM interacts with some Oracle WebLogic versions, including version 12.2.1.3. Before you begin, see the "Installation and Upgrade" chapter of the *Multidomain MDM Release Notes*.

Before you install the Hub Server and the Process Server on the WebLogic application server, create WebLogic domains. Use the WebLogic Administration console to create domains for the Hub Server and the Process Server applications. For more information, see the WebLogic documentation.

Note: Install the application server in the same time zone as the database server.

### Configure the Java Virtual Machines

To configure a Java Virtual Machine (JVM), set the Java options by using the the JAVA\_OPTIONS environment variable.

You can set the Java options in the following file:

On UNIX. < WebLogic domain > / bin/setDomainEnv.sh

 $\textbf{On Windows}. \verb|<WebLogic domain>\\| bin\\| setDomainEnv.cmd\\|$ 

The following table describes the Java options:

| Java Options   | Description   |
|--|---|
| -server  | Results in a slower startup but subsequent operations are faster.   |
| -Djgroups.bind_addr                                  | Interface on which JGroup must receive and send messages.  Required in a multinode or clustered environment. Ensure that each node  |
| -Djava.net.preferlPv4Stack                           | binds to its own network interface.  Specifies whether Java uses Internet Protocol version 4 (IPv4). If the   |
|  | operating system uses Internet Protocol version 6 (IPv6), set to true.  |
| -Doracle.jdbc.J2EE13Compliant                        | Sets the oracle.jdbc.J2EE13Compliant system variable. Set to true.  If you do not set the parameter to true, you might encounter Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) issues   |
| -Djavax.wsdl.factory.WSDLFactory                     | Required for the WebLogic 12.2.1 or later environments to invoke a service WSDL that might have a default namespace prefix. Set to com.ibm.wsdl.factory.WSDLFactoryImpl.  |
| -DANTLR_USE_DIRECT_CLASS_LOADING                     | Required for launching WebLogic 12.2.1 or later environments on which the MDM Hub is deployed. Set to true.   |
| -Dmdm.node.groupid                                   | Specifies a group ID for Java Virtual Machines in the MDM Hub implementation. Required only if you want logical groupings of Hub Servers and Process Servers.   |
| -De360.mdm.host                                      | Application server host.  Set the Java option in one of the following scenarios:  If you want to deploy the MDM Hub applications only on Managed Servers, add the Java option to the script of each Managed Server. Set to the IP address or symbolic name of the Managed Server.  If you want to deploy the MDM Hub applications on a WebLogic port other than 7001, add the Java option to the application server startup script. Set to the IP address or symbolic name of the WebLogic host. If you do not configure this parameter, Informatica Data Director screens based on the Entity 360 Framework might not work as expected |
| -De360.mdm.port                                      | Application server port.  Set the Java option in one of the following scenarios:  If you want to deploy the MDM Hub applications only on Managed Servers, add the Java option to the script of each Managed Server. Set to the port number of the Managed Server.  If you want to deploy the MDM Hub applications on a WebLogic port other than 7001, add the Java option to the application server startup script and set to the port number.  If you do not configure this parameter, Informatica Data Director screens based on the Entity 360 Framework might not work as expected  |
| -Dfile.encoding<br>-Dweblogic.http.URIDecodeEncoding | Required if you want to use Informatica Data Director and use REST APIs to search for records.  Set both the Java options to UTF-8 to ensure that you can find and save records that contain UTF-8 characters.  |

| Java Options  | Description  |
|---|--|
| -DFrameworksLogConfigurationPath                              | Sets the log4j.xml file configuration path.  |
| -DUseSunHttpHandler   | Specifies whether WebLogic uses the Sun HTTP Handler for the HTTP connection between the MDM Hub and the Informatica platform. Set to true.  |
| -Dtask.pageSize= <maximum number="" of="" tasks=""></maximum> | Specifies the maximum number of ActiveVOS tasks that are retrieved for each request. Default is 5000. Increase the number if your environment has a large number of tasks.             |
| -Dstricttransportsecurity.flag                                | Specifies whether web browsers must convert all attempts to access Informatica Data Director using the HTTP requests to the HTTPS requests instead. Set to true.                       |
| WLS_MEM_ARGS_64BIT  | Memory variable. Set the variable to an appropriate value.   |
| -Xms  | Initial heap size. Set to 2048m.   |
| -Xmx  | Maximum JVM heap size. Set to 4 GB or higher.  For example, to set the -Xmx to 4096m, use the following JAVA_OPTIONS environment variable setting:  set "JAVA_OPTIONS=-serverXmx4096m" |
| XX:+UseCodeCacheFlushing                                      | Specifies whether the JVM disposes of compiled code when the code cache is full.   |
| -XX:ReservedCodeCacheSize                                     | JIT code cache size. To enhance the performance of the MDM Hub environment, set to 512m.   |

### Logical Grouping of Java Virtual Machine Example

By grouping Java Virtual Machines (JVMs), you get a logical group of Hub Servers and Process Servers. When you deploy the Hub Server and Process Server applications in a logical JVM group, all communication between the applications stays within the group. To group JVMs, you assign a group ID to each JVM in the MDM Hub environment.

**Note:** Process Server grouping is applicable to the cleanse and match process only. A Process Server that is enabled as a Zookeeper server and is enabled for smart search is available to all the groups for indexing and search processing.

The following table shows an example of logical JVM groups:

| JVM Group | JVM  | Hub Server | Process Server |
|-----------|------|------------|----------------|
| Group1    | JVM1 | Yes        | Yes            |
| Group1    | JVM4 | -          | Yes            |
| Group2    | JVM2 | Yes        | Yes            |
| Group3    | JVM3 | -          | Yes            |

For JVM1, add the following Java option in the startup script:

```
-Dmdm.node.groupid=Group1
```

For JVM2, add the following Java option in the startup script:

```
-Dmdm.node.groupid=Group2
```

For JVM3, add the following Java option in the startup script:

```
-Dmdm.node.groupid=Group3
```

For JVM4, add the following Java option in the startup script:

```
-Dmdm.node.groupid=Group1
```

After you configure the JVMs, and deploy the Hub Servers and Process Servers, the groups have the following characteristics:

- Group1 has two Process Servers, Group2 has one Process Server, and Group3 has one Process Server.
- All cleanse and batch calls stay in their own group with the exception of smart search. For example, any real-time call on the Hub Server in Group1 affects only the Group1 Process Servers (JVM1 and JVM4).

### Disable WebLogic Server Authentication

The MDM Hub uses HTTP basic authentication for which you must disable WebLogic Server authentication. To disable WebLogic Server authentication, edit the <code>config.xml</code> file.

1. Navigate to the following WebLogic directory:

```
<WebLogic installation directory>/user projects/domains/<user domain>/config
```

- 2. Open the config.xml file in a text editor.
- 3. Add the following element within the <security-configuration> element:

```
<enforce-valid-basic-auth-credentials>
   false
</enforce-valid-basic-auth-credentials>
```

### Create the ActiveVOS Console Administrative User

If you want to use ActiveVOS, create the ActiveVOS Console administrative user with the abAdmin role in the application server container. If you want to use ActiveVOS, create the ActiveVOS Console administrative user with the abAdmin role. If you do not create an administrative user, the Hub Server deployment fails. Use the ActiveVOS Console administrative user name and password when the Hub Server installer prompts you to enter the administrative user credentials for the ActiveVOS Console.

1. Change to the following directory:

```
<JBoss installation directory>/bin
```

2. To run the add-user utility, use the following script:

```
On UNIX. add-user.sh
```

On Windows. add-user.bat

3. Answer the prompts that appear.

The following table describes the values to specify for each prompt:

| Prompt  | Value to Specify  |
|---|---|
| What type of user do you wish to add? a) Management User or b) Application User             | To select Application User, enter b.  |
| Realm (ApplicationRealm)  | Realm name. Enter the realm name that you specified in the login-module that you added to the standalone-full.xml file. |
| Username  | ActiveVOS Console administrator name.   |
| Password  | Password that complies with the JBoss password standard.  |
| What roles do you want this user to belong to?  | abAdmin.  |
| About to add user <user name=""> for realm <realm name="">. Is this correct?</realm></user> | To add the user, enter yes.   |
| Is this new user going to be used for one AS process to connect to another AS process?      | yes.  |

4. Log in to the WebSphere console, and create the ActiveVOS Console administrative user.

Note: The ActiveVOS console user is mapped to the abAdmin role when you run the postInstallSetup or the patchInstallSetup script during the post-installation or post-upgrade process.

- 5. Log in to the WebLogic console.
- 6. Create the abAdmin role.
- 7. Create the ActiveVOS Console administrative user.
- 8. Assign the administrative user to the abAdmin role

# Additional Oracle WebLogic Configuration

Perform additional WebLogic configuration based on the requirements of the MDM Hub environment.

The following table describes the configurations that you can perform:

| Configuration   | Description   |
|---|---|
| Configuring WebLogic for standalone Process Server instances  | Required to configure WebLogic for standalone Process Server instances in the following scenarios:  - You want to install a Process Server instance on a WebLogic instance on which you do not have the Hub Server installed.  - You want to install multiple, standalone Process Server instances. |
| Configuring WebLogic for multiple<br>MDM Hub Master Databases | Required if you want to configure multiple MDM Hub Master Database instances.   |

| Configuration  | Description  |
|--|--|
| Configuring the HTTPS protocol                       | Required if you want to configure the HTTPS protocol for the MDM Hub communications. |
| Configuring the JTA timeout for Informatica platform | Required if you want to install Informatica platform.                                |

### Configuring WebLogic for Standalone Process Server Instances

If you want to install multiple, standalone Process Server instances, configure WebLogic to use the appropriate data source. Also, if you want to install a Process Server instance on a WebLogic instance on which you do not have the Hub Server installed, configure the data source.

Perform the following tasks to configure WebLogic to use the appropriate data source:

- 1. Install the JDBC driver.
- 2. Create an MDM Hub Master Database data source.
- 3. Create an Operational Reference Store data source.

#### Step 1. Install the JDBC Driver

Before you create data sources for the MDM Hub Master Database and the Operational Reference Store (ORS), install the JDBC driver.

Contact Oracle to get the supported version of the JDBC driver.

Contact Microsoft to get the supported version of the JDBC driver.

Contact IBM to get the supported version of the JDBC driver.

1. Copy the JDBC driver to the following directory:

```
<WebLogic installation directory>/wlsserver/server/lib
```

2. Add the path to the JDBC driver to the CLASSPATH variable in the following file:

```
On UNIX. <WebLogic domain>/bin/setDomainEnv.sh
```

On Windows. <WebLogic domain>\bin\setDomainEnv.cmd

Note: Place the path to the JDBC driver before the path to other Weblogic Server libraries.

#### Step 2. Create an MDM Hub Master Database Data Source

After you install the JDBC driver, on the Process Server machine, create a data source for the MDM Hub Master Database.

- 1. On the WebLogic Administration Console, click the Lock & Edit button to acquire a lock.
- 2. Click Services > JDBC > Data Sources, and then click New.

The JDBC Data Sources Properties page appears.

3. Specify the following data source properties:

| Property        | Description   |
|-----------------|---|
| Name            | Name of the JDBC data source. Set the name to MDM Master Data Source.   |
| JNDI Name       | JNDI path to where the JDBC data source will be bound. Specify jdbc/siperian-cmx_system-ds.   |
| Database Type   | Database type that you want to connect to. Select <b>Oracle</b> . Select <b>MS SQL Server</b> .   |
| Database Driver | JDBC driver that you want to use to connect to the database. Select <b>Oracle driver (Thin XA)</b> . Select <b>MS SQL Server Driver (Type 4 XA) Versions: 2005 or later</b> . |

4. Click Next, and again click Next.

The Connection Properties page appears.

5. Enter values for the following connection properties:

| Property           | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| Database Name      | Name of the database you want to connect to.                                    |
| Host Name          | DNS name or IP address of the server that hosts the database.                   |
| Port               | Port on which the database server listens for connection requests.              |
| Database User Name | Database user name that you want to use for each connection in the data source. |
| Password           | Password of the database user account.  |
| Confirm Password   | Password of the database user account.  |

6. Click Next.

The **Test Database Connection** page appears.

7. Click **Test Configuration** to test the driver connections.

If the test is unsuccessful, you must update the values in the **Connection Properties** page and then retry the connection until successful.

- 8. Click **Next**, and then select the server on which you want to deploy the data source.
- 9. Click Finish, and then click Activate Changes.

#### Step 3. Create an Operational Reference Store Data Source

On the Process Server machine, create a data source for each Operational Reference Store.

- 1. On the WebLogic Administration Console, click the Lock & Edit button to acquire a lock.
- 2. Click Services > JDBC > Data Sources, and then click New.

The JDBC Data Sources Properties page appears.

3. Specify the following data source properties:

| Property        | Description   |
|-----------------|---|
| Name            | Name of the JDBC data source. Set the name to MDM ORS Data Source.  |
| JNDI Name       | JNDI path to where the JDBC data source will be bound. Specify jdbc/siperian- <oracle host="" name="">-<oracle sid="">-<operational name="" reference="" store="">-ds. Specify jdbc/siperian-<microsoft host="" name="" server="" sql="">-<operational name="" reference="" store="">-ds.</operational></microsoft></operational></oracle></oracle> |
| Database Type   | Database type that you want to connect to. Select <b>Oracle</b> . Select <b>MS SQL Server</b> .   |
| Database Driver | JDBC driver that you want to use to connect to the database. Select <b>Oracle driver (Thin XA)</b> . Select <b>MS SQL Server Driver (Type 4 XA) Versions: 2005 or later</b> .   |

4. Click Next, and again click Next.

The Connection Properties page appears.

5. Enter values for the following connection properties:

| Property           | Description   |
|--------------------|---|
| Database Name      | Name of the database you want to connect to.                                    |
| Host Name          | DNS name or IP address of the server that hosts the database.                   |
| Port               | Port on which the database server listens for connection requests.              |
| Database User Name | Database user name that you want to use for each connection in the data source. |
| Password           | Password of the database user account.  |
| Confirm Password   | Password of the database user account.  |

6. Click Next.

The **Test Database Connection** page appears.

7. Click **Test Configuration** to test the driver connections.

If the test is unsuccessful, you must update the values in the **Connection Properties** page and then retry the connection until successful.

- 8. Click **Next**, and then select the server on which you want to deploy the data source.
- 9. Click Finish, and then click Activate Changes.

### Configuring WebLogic for Multiple MDM Hub Master Databases

If you want to configure multiple MDM Hub Master Database instances, configure as many WebLogic domains as the number of MDM Hub Master Database instances. Each MDM Hub Master Database instance must have its own MDM Hub instance. Therefore, create as many WebLogic domains to deploy each MDM Hub instance on a separate WebLogic domain.

### Configuring the HTTPS Protocol

You can configure the HTTPS protocol for the MDM Hub communications. Use the WebLogic Server Administration Console to configure the HTTPS protocol. Alternatively, you can use the default JDK secure certificates to enable HTTPS.

 On the Home Page of the WebLogic Server Administration Console, under the Environment section, click Servers.

The **Summary of Servers** page appears.

- 2. In the Servers list, click the AdminServer(admin) link.
  - The Settings for AdminServer page appears.
- 3. Enable the SSL Listen Port Enabled option, and enter the port number in the SSL Listen Port field.
- 4. Click the SSL tab.
- 5. From the Hostname Verification list, select None, and click Save.

### Configuring the JTA Timeout for Informatica Platform

If you want to install Informatica platform, configure the Java Transaction API (JTA) timeout. Use the WebLogic Server Administration Console to configure the JTA timeout.

- On the Home Page of the WebLogic Server Administration Console, under the Services Configurations section, click the JTA Configuration link.
- 2. In the **Timeout Seconds** field, set the JTA timeout to 1000.

# Set Up IBM WebSphere

You can install the MDM Hub in IBM WebSphere cluster environments or standalone WebSphere instances. Install and configure WebSphere according to the instructions in the WebSphere documentation.

Ensure that there are no white spaces in the WebSphere installation directory path.

Note: Install the application server in the same time zone as the database server.

The following table lists the properties and their values to configure before installation, followed by a brief description of where to set the property:

| Custom Property                 | Value | Description  |
|---------------------------------|-------|--|
| com.ibm.ws.scripting.echoparams | false | Set this property in the wsadmin.properties file, which is located the following directory: <websphere directory="" installation=""> \WebSphere\AppServer\profiles\<profile name=""> \properties</profile></websphere> |
|                                 |       | Set this value to false to prevent the ActiveVOS database password from appearing in script text in the patchinstallSetup.log file. Default is true.   |

### **Configure Java Virtual Machines**

To configure a Java Virtual Machine (JVM), set Java options by using the JAVA\_OPTIONS environment variable. After you edit or add any Java options, restart the JVM.

If you use a WebSphere clustered environment, set the Java options for the following cluster components:

- Server. Set all the required Java options on each server in the cluster.
- Deployment Manager. Set all the required Java options.
- Node agent. Set only heap size by using the -Xmx and -Xms Java options.

The following table describes the Java options settings:

| Java Options                                | Description  |
|---|--|
| -server                                     | Results in a slower startup but subsequent operations are faster.  |
| -Djava.net.preferIPv4Stack                  | Specifies whether Java uses Internet Protocol version 4 (IPv4). If the operating system uses Internet Protocol version 6 (IPv6), set to true.  |
| -Ddb2.jcc.charsetDecoderEncoder             | Required to use the MDM Hub Sample Operational Reference Store. Enables the JDBC driver to return the Unicode replacement character (U+FFFD) in place of a sequence of bytes that is not a UTF-8 string. Set to 3.   |
| -Dcom.ibm.crypto.provider.DoRSATypeChecking | Specifies whether Java allows the RSA type encryption of data with private key and decryption with public key. Required for the MDM Hub installer to read the license certificates and for password hashing to work in the MDM Hub. Set to false.  If you do not set - Dcom.ibm.crypto.provider.DorsatypeChecking to false, the Hub Server might not start and you can encounter license errors. |
| -Djgroups.bind_addr                         | Interface on which JGroup must receive and send messages.  Required in a multinode or clustered environment. Ensure that each node binds to its own network interface.   |
| -DFrameworksLogConfigurationPath            | Path to the log4j.xml file.  |
| -Doracle.jdbc.J2EE13Compliant               | Specifies whether the system variable for the Oracle driver is fully compliant with J2EE. Set to true.  If you do not set the parameter to true, you might encounter Java Database Connectivity (JDBC) issues  |
| -Dmdm.node.groupid                          | Specifies a group ID for Java Virtual Machines in the MDM Hub implementation. Required only if you want logical groupings of Hub Servers and Process Servers.  |
| -Djavax.management.builder.initial          | Class of the initial MBeanServerBuilder to be instantiated. Apache<br>Solr MBeans is required to support smart search in Informatica<br>Data Director.   |
|   | To register Apache Solr MBeans to support smart search in Informatica Data Director, set to javax.management.MBeanServerBuilder.   |

| Java Options  | Description   |
|---|---|
| -Dfile.encoding -Dclient.encoding.override                    | Required if you want to use Informatica Data Director and use REST APIs to search for records.  |
| Š   | Set both the Java options to $\mathtt{UTF-8}$ to ensure that you can find and save records that contain UTF-8 characters.   |
| -Dstricttransportsecurity.flag                                | Specifies whether web browsers must convert all attempts to access Informatica Data Director using the HTTP requests to the HTTPS requests instead. Set to true.  |
| -XX:codecachetotal  | JIT code cache size. To enhance the performance of the MDM Hub environment, set to 512m.  |
| -Xmx  | Maximum JVM heap size. Set to 4 GB or higher.   |
|   | For example, to set the -Xmx to 4096m, use the following JAVA_OPTIONS environment variable setting:   |
|   | set "JAVA_OPTIONS=-serverXmx4096m"  |
| -Xms  | Initial heap size. Set to 2048m.  |
| -Xmso   | Required for the Process Server JVMs. Initial stack size for operating system threads. Prevents the application server from shutting down unexpectedly due to low system thread stack size. Set to 4096k. |
| -Xss  | Initial stack size. Set to 2000k.   |
| XX:+UseCodeCacheFlushing                                      | Specifies whether the JVM disposes of compiled code when the code cache is full.  |
| -Dtask.pageSize= <maximum number="" of="" tasks=""></maximum> | Specifies the maximum number of ActiveVOS tasks that are retrieved for each request. Default is 5000. Increase the number if your environment has a large number of tasks.                                |

### Logical Grouping of Java Virtual Machine Example

By grouping Java Virtual Machines (JVMs), you get a logical group of Hub Servers and Process Servers. When you deploy the Hub Server and Process Server applications in a logical JVM group, all communication between the applications stays within the group. To group JVMs, you assign a group ID to each JVM in the MDM Hub environment.

**Note:** Process Server grouping is applicable to the cleanse and match process only. A Process Server that is enabled as a Zookeeper server and is enabled for smart search is available to all the groups for indexing and search processing.

The following table shows an example of logical JVM groups:

| JVM Group | JVM  | Hub Server | Process Server |
|-----------|------|------------|----------------|
| Group1    | JVM1 | Yes        | Yes            |
| Group1    | JVM4 | -          | Yes            |

| JVM Group | JVM  | Hub Server | Process Server |
|-----------|------|------------|----------------|
| Group2    | JVM2 | Yes        | Yes            |
| Group3    | JVM3 | -          | Yes            |

For JVM1, add the following Java option in the startup script:

```
-Dmdm.node.groupid=Group1
```

For JVM2, add the following Java option in the startup script:

```
-Dmdm.node.groupid=Group2
```

For JVM3, add the following Java option in the startup script:

```
-Dmdm.node.groupid=Group3
```

For JVM4, add the following Java option in the startup script:

```
-Dmdm.node.groupid=Group1
```

After you configure the JVMs, and deploy the Hub Servers and Process Servers, the groups have the following characteristics:

- Group1 has two Process Servers, Group2 has one Process Server, and Group3 has one Process Server.
- All cleanse and batch calls stay in their own group with the exception of smart search. For example, any real-time call on the Hub Server in Group1 affects only the Group1 Process Servers (JVM1 and JVM4).

### Encrypt Passwords in the MDM Hub Environment

To encrypt sensitive data such as passwords that appear in log files in the MDM Hub environment, configure scripting administration in WebSphere.

1. Open the wsadmin.properties file in the following directory:

```
<WebSphere installation directory>/profiles/<Application server profile name>/properties
```

2. Set the com.ibm.ws.scripting.echoparams Java property to false.

### Create a Secure Profile in a WebSphere Environment

In WebSphere, configure a secure profile to use with Multidomain MDM and Informatica ActiveVOS.

1. From a command line, create a secure profile as shown in the following sample code:

On Windows

```
<app_server_root>\bin\manageprofiles.bat -create -profileName AppSrv01
-profilePath <app_server_root>\profileS\AppSrv01
-templatePath <app_server_root>\profileTemplates\default
-adminUserName administrator -adminPassword password1 -enableAdminSecurity true
```

#### On UNIX

```
<app_server_root>/bin/manageprofiles.sh -create -profileName AppSrv01
-profilePath <app_server_root>/profiles/AppSrv01
-templatePath <app_server_root>/profileTemplates/default
-adminUserName administrator -adminPassword password1 -enableAdminSecurity true
```

- 2. In the WebSphere console, change the security Transport type to SSL-Supported.
  - a. Expand Security and click Global Security.

- b. Under Authentication, expand RMI/IIOP security and click CSIv2 inbound communications
- c. Under CSIv2 Transport Layer, from the Transport list, select SSL-Supported.
- d. Click Apply, and then click Save.
- 3. In the WebSphere console, ensure that application security is set.
  - a. Expand Security and click Global Security.
  - b. Under Application Security, select Enable application security.
  - c. Click Apply, and then click Save.
- 4. Set up federated repositories.
  - Expand Security and click Global Security.
  - Under User account repository, from the Available realm definitions list, select Federated repositories.
  - c. Click Configure.
  - d. Under Repositories in the realm, click Use built-in repository.
  - e. Specify a password for the administrative user.
  - f. Click Apply, and then click Save.
- 5. Restart the WebSphere profile.

#### Create the Active VOS Console Administrative User

If you want to use ActiveVOS, create the ActiveVOS Console administrative user with the <code>abAdmin</code> role in the application server container. If you want to use ActiveVOS, create the ActiveVOS Console administrative user with the <code>abAdmin</code> role. If you do not create an administrative user, the Hub Server deployment fails. Use the ActiveVOS Console administrative user name and password when the Hub Server installer prompts you to enter the administrative user credentials for the ActiveVOS Console.

1. Change to the following directory:

<JBoss installation directory>/bin

2. To run the add-user utility, use the following script:

On UNIX. add-user.sh

On Windows. add-user.bat

3. Answer the prompts that appear.

The following table describes the values to specify for each prompt:

| Prompt  | Value to Specify  |
|---|---|
| What type of user do you wish to add? a) Management User or b) Application User | To select Application User, enter b.  |
| Realm (ApplicationRealm)  | Realm name. Enter the realm name that you specified in the login-module that you added to the standalone-full.xml file. |
| Username  | ActiveVOS Console administrator name.   |

| Prompt  | Value to Specify   |
|---|--|
| Password  | Password that complies with the JBoss password standard. |
| What roles do you want this user to belong to?  | abAdmin.   |
| About to add user <user name=""> for realm <realm name="">. Is this correct?</realm></user> | To add the user, enter yes.                              |
| Is this new user going to be used for one AS process to connect to another AS process?      | yes.   |

4. Log in to the WebSphere console, and create the ActiveVOS Console administrative user.

Note: The ActiveVOS console user is mapped to the abAdmin role when you run the postInstallSetup or the patchInstallSetup script during the post-installation or post-upgrade process.

- 5. Log in to the WebLogic console.
- 6. Create the abAdmin role.
- 7. Create the ActiveVOS Console administrative user.
- 8. Assign the administrative user to the abAdmin role

### Configure SOAP Request Timeout for MDM Hub Deployments

To ensure that deployment of the MDM Hub components do not time out, set the SOAP request timeout property. After a successful installation, you can reset the property to its default value.

- 2. Set the com.ibm.SOAP.requestTimeout property to 1800 or higher.

# Additional IBM WebSphere Configuration

Perform additional WebSphere configuration based on the requirements of the MDM Hub environment.

The following table describes the configurations that you can perform:

| Configuration   | Description   |
|---|---|
| Configuring WebSphere for standalone Process Server instances     | Required to configure WebSphere for standalone Process Server instances in the following scenarios:  - You want to install a Process Server instance on a WebSphere instance on which you do not have the Hub Server installed.  - You want to install multiple, standalone Process Server instances. |
| Configuring WebSphere for<br>multiple MDM Hub Master<br>Databases | Required if you want to configure multiple MDM Hub Master Database instances.   |

| Configuration  | Description  |
|--|--|
| Configuring the HTTPS protocol                         | Required if you want to configure the HTTPS protocol for the MDM Hub communications. |
| Configuring WebSphere for<br>Informatica Data Director | Required if you want to use Data Director.   |

# Configuring WebSphere for Standalone Process Server Instances

If you want to install multiple, standalone Process Server instances, configure WebSphere to use the appropriate data source. Also, if you want to install a Process Server instance on a WebSphere instance on which you do not have the Hub Server installed, configure the data source.

Perform the following tasks to configure WebSphere to use the appropriate data source:

- 1. Install the JDBC driver.
- 2. Create an MDM Hub Master Database data source.
- 3. Create an Operational Reference Store data source.

## Step 1. Install the JDBC Driver

Before you create data sources for the MDM Hub Master Database and the Operational Reference Store (ORS), install the JDBC driver.

Contact Oracle to get the supported version of the JDBC driver.

Contact Microsoft to get the supported version of the JDBC driver.

Contact IBM to get the supported version of the JDBC driver.

Copy the JDBC driver to the following directory:

<WebSphere installation directory>/lib

### Step 2. Create an MDM Hub Master Database Data Source

After you install the JDBC driver, on the Process Server machine, create a data source for the MDM Hub Master Database.

- 1. Start the WebSphere Application Server Administrative Console.
- 2. Specify the location of the driver libraries.
  - a. Expand Environment in the console navigation tree.
  - b. Click the WebSphere Variables link.
  - c. Update the JDBC variable to point to the following JDBC driver directory:

```
<WebSphere installation directory>/lib
```

- 3. Create the security account that the MDM Hub Master Database data source will use.
  - a. Expand Security in the console navigation tree.
  - b. Click the Secure administration, applications, and infrastructure link.
  - c. Under Authentication, expand Java Authentication and Authorization Service, and click J2C Authentication Data.

d. Click **New**, and specify the following properties:

| Property | Description  |
|----------|--|
| Alias    | Name of the MDM Hub Master Database.                 |
| User ID  | User name to connect to the MDM Hub Master Database. |
| Password | Password to access the MDM Hub Master Database.      |

- e. Click OK.
- 4. Create the JDBC Provider.
  - a. Expand Resources > JDBC, and then click JDBC Providers.

The **JDBC Provider** page appears.

- b. Select the scope for applications to use the data source.
- c. Click New, and specify the following properties:

| Property            | Description  |  |
|---------------------|--|--|
| Database type       | Type of database. Select <b>Oracle.</b>  |  |
| Provider type       | Type of JDBC provider. Select <b>Oracle JDBC Driver</b> .                                |  |
| Implementation type | Data source implementation type. Select <b>XA data source</b> .                          |  |
| Name                | Name of the JDBC provider. Change the name to Informatica MDM Oracle JDBC Provider (XA). |  |

- d. Click **Next**, and then click **Finish**.
- 5. Create the MDM Hub Master Database data source.
  - a. Click the JDBC provider that you created.

The **Configuration** page appears.

b. Under Additional Properties, click Data sources.

The **Data Sources** page appears.

c. Click New.

d. Specify the following data source properties:

| Property                                  | Description   |  |
|---|---|--|
| Name                                      | Data source name. Specify MDM Master Data Source.   |  |
| JNDI Name                                 | JNDI path to where the JDBC data source will be bound. Specify jdbc/siperian-cmx_system-ds.  Note: The JNDI name must be in lower case. |  |
| Component-managed<br>Authentication Alias | Authentication alias of the Master Database data source. Select <host name="">/cmx_system.</host>                                       |  |

e. Click Next, and then click Finish.

## Step 3. Create an Operational Reference Store Data Source

After you install the JDBC driver, on the Process Server machine, create a data source for each Operational Reference Store.

- 1. Start the WebSphere Application Server Administrative Console.
- 2. Specify the location of the driver libraries.
  - a. Expand Environment in the console navigation tree.
  - b. Click the WebSphere Variables link.
  - c. Update the JDBC variable to point to the following JDBC driver directory:

```
<WebSphere installation directory>/lib
```

- 3. Create the security account that the Operational Reference Store will use.
  - a. Expand Security in the console navigation tree.
  - b. Click the Secure administration, applications, and infrastructure link.
  - Under Authentication, expand Java Authentication and Authorization Service, and click J2C
     Authentication Data.
  - d. Click **New**, and set the following properties:

| Property | Description  |
|----------|--|
| Alias    | Name of the Operational Reference Store.                 |
| User ID  | User name to connect to the Operational Reference Store. |
| Password | Password to access the Operational Reference Store.      |

- e. Click OK.
- 4. Create the JDBC Provider.
  - a. Expand Resources > JDBC, and then click JDBC Providers.

The JDBC Provider page appears.

- b. Select the scope for applications to use the data source.
- c. Click New, and specify the following properties:

| Property            | Description  |  |
|---------------------|--|--|
| Database type       | Type of database. Select <b>Oracle.</b>  |  |
| Provider type       | Type of JDBC provider. Select <b>Oracle JDBC Driver</b> .                                |  |
| Implementation type | Data source implementation type. Select <b>XA data source</b> .                          |  |
| Name                | Name of the JDBC provider. Change the name to Informatica MDM Oracle JDBC Provider (XA). |  |

- d. Click Next, and then click Finish.
- 5. Create the Operational Reference Store data source.
  - a. Click the JDBC provider that you created.

The Configuration page appears.

b. Under Additional Properties, click Data sources.

The Data Sources page appears.

- c. Click New.
- d. Specify the following data source properties:

| Property   | Description   |  |
|--|---|--|
| Name   | Data source name. Specify MDM ORS Data Source.  |  |
| JNDI Name  | JNDI path to where the JDBC data source will be bound. Specify jdbc/siperian- <oracle host="" name="">-<oracle sid="">-<operational name="" reference="" store="">- dsjdbc/siperian-<ibm db2="" host="" name="">-<ibm database="" db2="" name="">- <operational name="" reference="" store="">-dsjdbc/siperian-<microsoft host="" name="" server="" sql="">-<operational name="" reference="" store="">-ds.  Note: The JNDI name must be in lower case.</operational></microsoft></operational></ibm></ibm></operational></oracle></oracle> |  |
| Component-<br>managed<br>Authentication<br>Alias | Authentication alias of the Master Database data source. Select <host name="">/ <operational name="" reference="" store="">.</operational></host>   |  |
| Driver Class<br>Name                             | JDBC driver class. Set to com.microsoft.sqlserver.jdbc.SQLServerXADataSource.   |  |

e. Click Next, and then click Finish.

# Configuring WebSphere for Multiple MDM Hub Master Databases

If you want to configure multiple MDM Hub Master Database instances, configure as many WebSphere profiles as the number of MDM Hub Master Database instances. Each MDM Hub Master Database instance must have its own MDM Hub instance. Therefore, create as many WebSphere profiles to deploy each MDM Hub instance on a separate WebSphere profile.

# Configuring the HTTPS Protocol

You can configure the HTTPS protocol for communications between the MDM Hub components such as the Hub Server, Process Server, and ActiveVOS. Configure the HTTPS protocol in the WebSphere application server.

- 1. Create an SSL-enabled WebSphere port.
- 2. Configure WebSphere to allow self-signed certificates.

For more information about configuring the HTTPS protocol, see the WebSphere documentation.

## Configuring WebSphere for Informatica Data Director

If you want to use Data Director, configure WebSphere and then restart WebSphere for the changes to take effect.

Ensure that you perform the following configurations:

- Set the web container custom property.

  Use the WebSphere Console to set com.ibm.ws.webcontainer.invokerequestlistenerforfilter to true. For instructions on setting web container custom properties, see the WebSphere documentation.
- To support the management of tasks, increase the value for timeout properties by a factor of 2. Perform the following task by using the the WebSphere Console:
  - navigate to WebSphere Console Servers > Server Types > WebSphere application servers > <target server name>.
  - In the Container Services category, click Transaction service and increase the values for the timeout properties.

# CHAPTER 5

# **Hub Store Upgrade**

This chapter includes the following topics:

- Hub Store Upgrade Overview, 78
- Clone the Hub Store (Clean Upgrade), 79
- Databases Set to a Non-English Locale, 79
- Upgrading the MDM Hub Master Database in Verbose Mode, 79
- Upgrading the MDM Hub Master Database in Silent Mode, 81
- Upgrading Operational Reference Store Databases in Verbose Mode, 82
- Upgrading Operational Reference Store Databases in Silent Mode, 85
- · Confirm that the Upgrade Scripts Ran Successfully, 86

# **Hub Store Upgrade Overview**

The Hub Store is the database that contains the MDM Hub Master Database and one or more Operational Reference Store (ORS) databases. Use the scripts provided in the distribution to upgrade the databases.

Before you upgrade, each effective period of a relationship has a dedicated base object record. The upgrade process creates a cross-reference record for each effective period. The upgrade process merges the base object records for each relationship into a single record. The MDM Hub uses the HM\_MIG tag in the ROWID\_MATCH\_RULE column of the HMRG table to track the merged base object records. Do not unmerge these base object records. If you unmerge these relationship base object records, the Hierarchy Manager might display the incorrect effective period for the relationship. Ensure that you assess the impact of the consolidation of hierarchy relationship base objects after the upgrade.

If your database environment is set to a non-English locale, ensure that the character set is a Unicode character set before you upgrade the Hub Store. After the upgrade completes successfully, you can select your preferred locale. The locale is stored as a user account preference, rather than at the database level.

**Note:** Ensure that you do not include spaces in the path to the database directory or folder names. If you specify a path that has spaces in the directory or folder names, the upgrade fails.

# Clone the Hub Store (Clean Upgrade)

If you are performing a clean upgrade, ask a DBA to back up and clone the Master Database and the Operational Reference Stores. Copy the cloned databases to the new environment. You upgrade the Master Database and Operational Reference Stores in the new environment.

# Databases Set to a Non-English Locale

If the Hub Store database environment is set to a non-English locale, ensure that the database environment uses a Unicode character set before you run the upgrade script. You set the character set using a database environment variable.

The upgrade script translates metadata to English and associates a translation key with the metadata. After the upgrade is successful, each MDM Hub Console user can select any supported locale for the user interface and databases. The locale selection for each user is stored in the Master Database with all user data.

For example, consider an MDM Hub Store that resides in an Oracle database environment in a Korean locale. Before you upgrade, you ensure that the database environment variable NLS\_LANG is set to KOREAN\_KOREA. AL32UTF8 (Korean Unicode). After the upgrade, you can set your locale to Korean, while someone else can choose a different supported locale.

The following table lists database environment variables that you can use to set the character set:

| Database             | Environment Variable Name              |
|----------------------|--|
| Oracle               | NLS_LANG                               |
| IBM DB2              | DB2CODEPAGE                            |
| Microsoft SQL Server | SET LANGUAGE clause (for session only) |

For more information about database environment variables, see the documentation for your database.

# Upgrading the MDM Hub Master Database in Verbose Mode

To upgrade the MDM Hub Master Database, run the upgrade script.

**Note:** If you did not use the Hub Console to make metadata changes, the database upgrade script might fail. If a script fails, contact Informatica Global Customer Support.

- 1. Open a command prompt.
- 2. Navigate to the following directory:
  - In UNIX. <MDM Hub distribution directory>/database/bin
  - In Windows. <MDM Hub distribution directory>\database\bin

- 3. Run the MDM Hub Master Database upgrade script with the following command:
  - In UNIX. sip\_ant.sh updatemasterdatabase
  - In Windows. sip\_ant.bat updatemasterdatabase
- 4. Answer the prompts.

For Oracle environments, provide the following information for the MDM Hub Master Database:

| Prompt  | Description   |
|---|---|
| Enter database type (ORACLE,<br>MSSQL, DB2)   | Database type. Specify Oracle.  |
| Enter Oracle Connection Type (service, sid). [service]  | Connection type. Use one of the following values: SERVICE   |
|   | Uses the service name to connect to Oracle.   |
|   | SID   |
|   | Uses the Oracle System ID to connect to Oracle.   |
|   | Default is SERVICE.   |
| Enter the database host name [localhost]  | Name of the host that is running the database.  |
| Enter the database port number.<br>[1521]   | Port number that the database listener uses. Default is 1521.   |
| Enter the database service name [orcl]  | Name of the Oracle service. This prompt appears if the selected Oracle connection type is SERVICE. Default is orcl. |
| Enter Oracle Net connect identifier (TNS Name). [orcl]  | TNS name that is used to connect to the Oracle database. Default is orcl.   |
| Master Database Connect URL: "jdbc:oracle:thin:@// <host_name>:<port>/ <service_name>".</service_name></port></host_name> | Connect URL for the Oracle connection type SERVICE.   |
| Enter database SID [orcl]   | Name of the Oracle System ID. This prompt appears if the selected Oracle connection type is SID.                    |
| Master Database user name [cmx_system]  | You cannot change the MDM Hub Master Database name.   |
| Enter the Master Database user password   | Password to access the MDM Hub Master Database.   |

### 5. Answer the following prompt if it appears during the Master Database upgrade:

This upgrade should be performed by a DBA to grant 'create sequence' privileges for the master database. The master database does not have 'create sequence' privileges, you can either grant it now (manually) and then move forward or re-start the upgrade, or direct this process to do so for you now, and continue the current

```
upgrade.
Do you want the process to create this privilege? Yes/No
```

- If enter No, the upgrade process checks again to ensure the user granted the privilege, and then
  returns to the TNS name prompt.
- If you enter Yes, you must answer the following prompts before you can continue with the upgrade process:

Enter DBA username:

Enter DBA password:

- 6. In JBoss environments, restart the application server.
- 7. Save a copy of the CMX\_SYSTEM upgrade log files to the upgrade documentation directory. There is a log file for each change script.

The upgrade process saves the files to the following location:

• In UNIX.

<MDM Hub installation directory>/server/resources/database/db\_changes/<database name>/Master

In Windows.

# Upgrading the MDM Hub Master Database in Silent Mode

To upgrade the MDM Hub Master Database in silent mode, run the upgrade script with the appropriate command for the environment.

**Note:** To display the silent upgrade process in the command line, set -Dnoprompt to true. To display the only the start time and end time in the command line, set -Dnoprompt to true -silent.

- 1. Open a command prompt.
- 2. Navigate to the following directory:
  - UNIX. <MDM Hub distribution directory>/database/bin
  - Windows. <MDM Hub distribution directory>\database\bin
- 3. To upgrade the MDM Hub Master Database in an Oracle environment, run the following command: UNIX.

```
sip_ant.sh updatemasterdatabase -Dmaster.tnsname=<TNS name> -
Dmaster.connectiontype=<SID or SERVICE> -Dmaster.server=<host name> -
Dmaster.port=<port> -Dmaster.sid=<SID name> -Dmaster.username=<MDM Hub Master
Database username> -Dmaster.password=<MDM Hub Master Database password>-
Dcmx.username=<administrator username> -Dcmx.password=<administrator password> -
Dcmx.server.masterdatabase.type=ORACLE -Dnoprompt=true
```

#### Windows.

```
sip_ant.bat updatemasterdatabase -Dmaster.tnsname=<TNS name> -
Dmaster.connectiontype=<SID or SERVICE> -Dmaster.server=<host name> -
Dmaster.port=<port> -Dmaster.sid=<SID name> -Dmaster.username=<MDM Hub Master
Database username> -Dmaster.password=<MDM Hub Master Database password>-
Dcmx.username=<administrator username> -Dcmx.password=<administrator password> -
Dcmx.server.masterdatabase.type=ORACLE -Dnoprompt=true
```

4. To upgrade the MDM Hub Master Database in an IBM DB2 environment, run the following command: UNIX.

```
sip_ant.sh updatemasterdatabase -Dcmx.server.masterdatabase.type=DB2 -
Dmaster.hostname=<host name>
-Dmaster.port=<port> -Dmaster.username=<MDM Hub Master Database username> -
Dmaster.password=<MDM Hub Master Database password> -Ddba.username=<DBA username>
-Ddba.password=<DBA password> -Dnoprompt=true
```

#### Windows.

```
sip_ant.bat updatemasterdatabase -Dcmx.server.masterdatabase.type=DB2 -
Dmaster.hostname=<host name>
-Dmaster.port=<port> -Dmaster.username=<MDM Hub Master Database username> -
Dmaster.password=<MDM Hub Master Database password> -Ddba.username=<DBA username>
-Ddba.password=<DBA password> -Dnoprompt=true
```

To upgrade the MDM Hub Master Database in a Microsoft SQL Server environment, run the following command:

#### UNIX.

```
sip_ant.sh updatemasterdatabase -Dmaster.hostname=<hostname> -Dmaster.port=<port> -Dmaster.username=<MDM Hub Master Database username>
-Dmaster.password=<MDM Hub Master Database password>
-Dcmx.username=<administrator username> -Dcmx.password=<administrator password> -Dcmx.server.masterdatabase.type=MSSQL
-Dmaster.database=<MDM Hub Master Database name> -Dnoprompt=true
```

#### Windows.

```
sip_ant.bat updatemasterdatabase -Dmaster.hostname<<hoodrags</pre>
-Dmaster.username=<MDM Hub Master Database username>
-Dmaster.password=<MDM Hub Master Database password>
-Dcmx.username=<administrator username> -Dcmx.password=<administrator password> -Dcmx.server.masterdatabase.type=MSSQL
-Dmaster.database=<MDM Hub Master Database name> -Dnoprompt=true
```

# Upgrading Operational Reference Store Databases in Verbose Mode

To upgrade each Operational Reference Store (ORS) database, run an upgrade script. Upgrade the MDM Hub Master Database before you upgrade the ORS databases.

**Note:** If you did not use the Hub Console to make metadata changes, the database upgrade script might fail. If a script fails, contact Informatica Global Customer Support.

- 1. Stop the application server.
- 2. Open a command prompt.
- 3. Navigate to the following directory:
  - On UNIX. <MDM Hub distribution directory>/database/bin
  - On Windows. <MDM Hub distribution directory>\database\bin
- 4. Run the Operational Reference Store upgrade script with the following command:
  - UNIX../sip ant.sh updateorsdatabase
  - Windows. sip ant.bat updateorsdatabase
- 5. Answer the prompts.

For Oracle environments, provide the following information:

| Prompts   | Description  |
|---|--|
| Enter database type (ORACLE, MSSQL, DB2)  | Database type. Specify Oracle.   |
| Enter Oracle Connection Type (service, sid). [service]  | Connection type. Use one of the following values: SERVICE  |
|   | Uses the service name to connect to Oracle.  |
|   | SID  |
|   | Uses the Oracle System ID to connect to Oracle.  |
|   | Default is SERVICE.  |
| Enter the Operational Reference Store database host name [localhost]  | Name of the host that is running the database.   |
| Enter the Operational Reference Store database port number. [1521]  | Port number that the database listener uses. Default is 1521.  |
| Enter the Operational Reference Store database service name [orcl]  | Name of the Oracle service. This prompt is displayed if the selected Oracle connection type is SERVICE.  |
| Enter Oracle Net connect identifier (TNS Name) [orcl]   | Oracle TNS name. Default is orcl.  |
| Master Database Connect URL: "jdbc:oracle:thin:@//<br><host_name>:<port>/<service_name>".<br/>Do you want to change the connect URL (y/n) [n]</service_name></port></host_name> | Connect URL for the Oracle connection type SERVICE. You can type ${\bf y}$ to change the default connect URL. To use the default connect URL, type ${\bf n}$ . |
| Enter database SID [orcl]   | Name of the Oracle System ID. This prompt is displayed if the selected Oracle connection type is SID.  |
| Enter the Operational Reference Store database name [cmx_ors]   | Name of the Operational Reference Store database.  Default is cmx_ors.   |
| Enter the Operational Reference Store database user password  | Password to access the Operational Reference Store.  |
| Enter locale name from the list: de, en_US, fr, ja, ko, zh_CN. [en_US]  | Operating system locale.   |
| Enter the DBA username [sys]  | Name of the user with DBA-level permissions.   |
| Enter the DBA password  | Password of the user with DBA-level permissions.   |
| Enter integer code of ORS Timeline Granularity: Year 5, Month 4, Day 3, Hour 2, Minute 1, Second 0 [3]  | Specify timeline units to use. Default is days.  |

For IBM DB2 environments, provide the following information:

| Prompts   | Description  |
|---|--|
| Enter database type (ORACLE, MSSQL, DB2)  | Database type. Specify DB2.  |
| Enter the Operational Reference Store database host name [localhost]                                      | Name of the host that is running the database.                         |
| Enter the Operational Reference Store database port number [50000]  | Port number that the database listener uses. Default is 50000.         |
| Enter the Operational Reference Store database name [SIP97]   | Name of the database. Default is SIP97.                                |
| Enter the Operational Reference Store database name [cmx_ors]   | Name of the Operational Reference Store database.  Default is cmx_ors. |
| Enter the Operational Reference Store database user password  | Password to access the Operational Reference Store.                    |
| Enter locale name from list: de, en_US, fr, ja, ko, zh_CN. [en_US]  | Operating system locale. Default is en_US.                             |
| Enter the DBA username [sys]  | Name of the user with DBA-level permissions.                           |
| Enter the DBA password  | Password of the user with DBA-level permissions.                       |
| Enter integer code of ORS Timeline Granularity: Year 5,<br>Month 4, Day 3, Hour 2, Minute 1, Second 0 [3] | Specify timeline units to use. Default is days.                        |

For Microsoft SQL Server environments, provide the following information:

| Prompts  | Description  |
|--|--|
| Enter database type (ORACLE, MSSQL, DB2)                             | Database type. Specify MSSQL.  |
| Enter the Operational Reference Store database host name [localhost] | Name of the host that is running the database.                         |
| Enter the Operational Reference Store database port number [1433]    | Port number that the database listener uses. Default is 1433.          |
| Enter the Operational Reference Store database name [cmx_ors]        | Name of the Operational Reference Store database.  Default is cmx_ors. |
| Enter the Operational Reference Store database user password         | Password to access the Operational Reference<br>Store.                 |
| Enter locale name from list: de, en_US, fr, ja, ko, zh_CN. [en_US]   | Operating system locale. Default is en_US.                             |
| Enter the DBA username [sys]   | Name of the user with DBA-level permissions.                           |

| Prompts   | Description                                      |
|---|--|
| Enter the DBA password  | Password of the user with DBA-level permissions. |
| Enter integer code of ORS Timeline Granularity: Year 5,<br>Month 4, Day 3, Hour 2, Minute 1, Second 0 [3] | Specify timeline units to use. Default is days.  |

- 6. Register the upgraded ORS in the Hub Console.
- 7. Restart the application server.
- 8. Save a copy of the database debug log the your upgrade documentation directory. The environment report specifies the location of the debug log.
- 9. Save a copy of the CMX\_ORS upgrade log files to the upgrade documentation directory. There is a log file for each change script.

The upgrade process saves the files to the following location:

• In UNIX.

· In Windows.

<MDM Hub installation directory>\server\resources\database\db\_changes\<database

**Important:** The  $sip\_ant$  log file is overwritten every time you execute  $sip\_ant$  from the command line. You must save a backup copy before you run the  $sip\_ant$  script to upgrade another ORS.

#### **RELATED TOPICS:**

• "Saving the MDM Hub Environment Report" on page 133

# Upgrading Operational Reference Store Databases in Silent Mode

To upgrade an Operational Reference Store database in silent mode, run the upgrade script with the appropriate command for the environment.

**Note:** To display the silent upgrade process in the command line, set <code>-Dnoprompt</code> to true. To display the only the start time and end time of the silent upgrade process in the command line, set <code>-Dnoprompt</code> to true <code>-silent</code>.

- 1. Open a command prompt.
- 2. Navigate to the following directory:
  - UNIX. <MDM Hub distribution directory>/database/bin
  - Windows. <MDM Hub distribution directory>\database\bin
- To upgrade an Operational Reference Store in an Oracle environment, run the following command: UNIX.

sip\_ant.sh updateorsdatabase -Dors.tnsname=<tns name> -Dors.connectiontype=sid Dors.hostname=<hostname> -Dors.port=<port> -Dors.sid=<Oracle SID> -

```
Dors.username=<ORS username> -Dors.password=<ORS password> -
Dcmx.server.masterdatabase.type=oracle -Dnoprompt=true
```

#### Windows.

```
sip_ant.bat updateorsdatabase -Dors.tnsname=<tns name> -Dors.connectiontype=sid -
Dors.hostname=<hostname> -Dors.port=<port> -Dors.sid=<Oracle SID> -
Dors.username=<ORS username> -Dors.password=<ORS password> -
Dcmx.server.masterdatabase.type=oracle -Dnoprompt=true
```

4. To upgrade the Operational Reference Store in an IBM DB2 environment, run the following command:

#### UNIX.

```
sip_ant.sh updateorsdatabase -Dors.hostname=<host name> -Dors.database=%db2database%
-Dors.port=<port>
-Dors.username=<ORS username> -Dors.password=<ORS password>
Dcmx.server.masterdatabase.type=db2 -Dnoprompt=true
```

#### Windows.

```
\label{local-constraint} $$\sup_{\alpha \to \infty} -Dors.hostname = \host name > -Dors.database = \host.database = \host.name > -Dors.database = \host.database = \host.dat
```

To upgrade the Operational Reference Store in a Microsoft SQL Server environment, run the following command:

#### UNIX.

```
sip_ant.sh updateorsdatabase -Dors.hostname=<hostname> -Dors.port=<port> -
Dors.username=<ORS username>
-Dors.password=<ORS password> -Dors.database=<database name> -
Dcmx.server.masterdatabase.type=MSSQL
   -Dnoprompt=true
```

#### Window.

```
sip_ant.bat updateorsdatabase -Dors.hostname=<hostname> -Dors.port=<port> -
Dors.username=<ORS username>
-Dors.password=<ORS password> -Dors.database=<database name> -
Dcmx.server.masterdatabase.type=MSSQL
   -Dnoprompt=true
```

# Confirm that the Upgrade Scripts Ran Successfully

Check the C\_REPOS\_DB\_CHANGE table to see that the Hub Store upgrade scripts ran successfully.

Scripts run during the upgrade process if they have not run during previous upgrades. If the C\_REPOS\_DB\_CHANGE table indicates that a script failed, contact Informatica Global Customer Support.

## CHAPTER 6

# Hub Server Upgrade (In-place Upgrade)

This chapter includes the following topics:

- Hub Server Upgrade Overview, 87
- · Upgrading the Hub Server in Graphical Mode, 88
- Upgrading the Hub Server in Console Mode, 91
- · Upgrading the Hub Server in Silent Mode, 93
- Run the patchInstallSetup Script, 96
- Copy Hub Server Log Files to the Upgrade Documentation Folder, 97
- Reapplying the Hub Server Upgrade (Optional), 98

# **Hub Server Upgrade Overview**

The Hub Server runs the core and common services for MDM, including access, security, and session management. The Hub Server is deployed in an application server environment.

**Note:** This chapter is for an in-place upgrade only. For a clean upgrade, install the Hub Server by following the instructions in the *Multidomain MDM Installation Guide* for your application server and database environment.

You can upgrade the Hub Server in graphical mode, console mode, or silent mode. To upgrade the Hub Server in graphical mode or console mode, run the Hub Server Installer provided in the distribution. To upgrade the Hub Server in silent mode, configure the silent installer properties files.

If you use a version of ActiveVOS Server that is not supported, you are prompted to install ActiveVOS Server during the Hub Server upgrade process.

The Hub Server installer differentiates a patch installation from a full installation when, during installation, you point to the existing MDM Hub installation as the target. Before overwriting the existing Hub Server installation, the MDM Hub Installer creates a backup of critical files.

# Upgrading the Hub Server in Graphical Mode

To upgrade the Hub Server in graphical mode, run the Hub Server installer.

**Tip:** If you use embedded ActiveVOS, the upgrade process requires you to install the updated version of ActiveVOS in a new directory. If you prefer to overwrite your existing ActiveVOS installation, before you begin the upgrade, open the ../hub/server/bin/build.properties file and comment out the following property: activevos.install.dir = <AVOS installed path>. For other pre-upgrade tasks, see <u>"Prepare the BPM"</u> Upgrade" on page 24.

- 1. Log in using the user name that was used to install the Hub Server.
- 2. Start the application server on which the Hub Server is deployed.
- 3. Open a command prompt and navigate to the Hub Server installer in the distribution directory. By default the installer is in the following directory:
  - On UNIX. <MDM Hub distribution directory>/<operating system name>/mrmserver
  - On Windows. <MDM Hub distribution directory>\windows\mrmserver
- 4. Run the following command:
  - On UNIX. hub install.bin
  - On Windows. hub install.exe
- 5. From the **Introduction** window, click **Next**.

The License Agreement window appears.

- 6. Review and accept the terms of the license agreement. Click Next.
- 7. Select the location of the Hub Server installation. The Hub Server installation folder contains the siperian-mrm.ear file. Click **Next**.

The Version Warning message appears.

- 8. Click **OK** to upgrade an existing Hub Server installation.
- If the previous installation uses WebLogic as the application server, the Hub Server installer prompts you to provide the WebLogic Admin password. Enter the WebLogic password.
- 10. If you use, or want to use, ActiveVOS for business process management, install the embedded ActiveVOS version that is recommended for this version of Multidomain MDM.

**Note:** If you already have a supported version of ActiveVOS installed, you can skip some of the substeps in this step. Perform substep c. to enter database details and substep 12f. to specify the user name and password for the ActiveVOS Server Administration Console.

- a. Select Yes.
- On the Choose ActiveVOS Installation Folder page, accept the default path or select another location. Click Next.
- c. On the **Database Information** page, enter the database details that you specified when you created the ActiveVOS database schema, and click **Next**.
  - **Note:** If you are moving from standalone ActiveVOS to embedded ActiveVOS, enter the details for the standalone ActiveVOS schema.
- d. On the Application Server Web URL page, accept the default URL or specify the URL that you want to use to call ActiveVOS web services. Ensure the URL contains the correct port number for the connection to the application server. Click Next.

- The post installation setup script uses the URL to call ActiveVOS web services, deploy the predefined MDM workflows to ActiveVOS, and create the URN mapping.
- e. On the **ActiveVOS Installer** page, click **Choose**. Browse to the ActiveVOS\_Server installation file in the distribution package. Click **Next**.
- f. Enter the administrative user name and password to create an administrative user for the ActiveVOS Console
  - **Important:** The user name and password must be the same as the ActiveVOS Console user name and password that was created in the application server.
- g. Click Next.
- 11. Select one of the following Informatica platform installation options:
  - Yes. Install Informatica platform.
  - No. Does not install Informatica platform.
- 12. If you select **Yes** in the preceding step, click **Choose** and browse to the following Informatica platform file locations:
  - · Installation response file
  - · Platform installation file
- 13. On the Product Usage Toolkit page, select the industry to which the organization belongs and the environment type.
- 14. If you want to use a proxy server, select **Yes**, and enter the proxy server details. Otherwise, select **No**. You can enter the following proxy server details:
  - Proxy server name/IP
  - · Proxy server port
  - Proxy server domain name. Leave blank if not applicable.
  - Proxy server user name. Leave blank if not applicable.
  - · Proxy server password. Leave blank if not applicable.
- 15. Click Next.

The Deploy window appears.

16. Select whether to deploy the Hub Server EAR file automatically or manually, and then click **Next**.

| Option                                       | Conditions  |
|--|---|
| Yes, run the script during this installation | Deploys the Hub Server EAR file automatically after a successful installation.  Select this option if you use one of the following application server environments with one of the ActiveVOS scenarios:  Application server environments: |
|  | <ul> <li>JBoss standalone environment</li> <li>WebSphere standalone environment</li> <li>ActiveVOS scenarios:</li> </ul>  |
|  | You chose to install ActiveVOS and no other version of ActiveVOS is installed in this environment.  |
|  | <ul> <li>You chose to install ActiveVOS and the environment includes a supported version of<br/>ActiveVOS. Check the product availability matrix (PAM) for supported versions.</li> <li>You chose not to install ActiveVOS.</li> </ul>    |
|  | Important: If you chose to install ActiveVOS but you have an unsupported version of ActiveVOS in your environment, select No, I will run it later.  |
| No, I will run it                            | You package and deploy the Hub Server EAR file manually.  |
| later  | Select this option if you use one of the following application server environments, with or without ActiveVOS:  |
|  | WebLogic standalone environment     WebLogic clustered environment  |
|  | JBoss clustered environment     WebSphere clustered environment   |
|  | If you are using any application server environment that includes an unsupported version of ActiveVOS, select this option. You must upgrade the ActiveVOS schema to the supported version and then deploy manually.                       |

The **Pre-Installation Summary** window appears.

- 17. To change any options, click the **Previous** button to change your previous selections.
- 18. After the summary window displays the options you want, click Install to start the installation process.

The Hub Server installer displays the **Please Wait** screen while the installer configures the system. The Hub Server installer backs up critical files to an archive that is stored in the backup folder in the MDM Hub installation directory. The file name of the archive uses the format shown in the following example:

```
Informatica MDM Hub Server-2010-09-27 12-13.jar
```

When the installation completes, the Install Complete window appears.

19. Click **Done** to exit the Hub Server installer.

**Note:** If the upgrade does not complete successfully, a window appears that states that the upgrade failed and displays the location of the log file that contains the failure messages.

- 20. If you selected **No, I will run it later**, repackage and deploy the Hub Server EAR file.
  - a. If you have an unsupported version of ActiveVOS in your environment, update the ActiveVOS schema to the supported version.
  - b. Run the following command to repackage the EAR file:

On UNIX.

```
cd <MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/server/bin ./sip_ant.sh repackage
```

#### On Windows.

```
cd <MDM Hub installation directory>\hub\server\bin
sip ant.bat repackage
```

- c. From the application server administration console, manually deploy the Hub Server EAR file. Refer to the application server documentation.
- 21. Restart the application server.

# Upgrading the Hub Server in Console Mode

You can upgrade the Hub Server in console mode in UNIX.

**Tip:** If you use embedded ActiveVOS for business process management, the upgrade process requires you to install the updated version of ActiveVOS in a new directory. If you prefer to overwrite the existing ActiveVOS installation, before you begin the upgrade, open the ../hub/server/bin/build.properties file and comment out the following property: activevos.install.dir = <AVOS installed path>.

- 1. Start the application server.
- 2. Navigate to the following directory in the MDM Hub distribution:

```
On UNIX. <MDM Hub distribution directory>/<operating system name>/mrmserver
```

3. Run the following command from the command prompt:

```
./hub install.bin -i console
```

4. Enter the number of the locale you want to choose for the upgrade, and then press **Enter**.

The introduction information about the upgrade appears.

5. Press Enter.

The license agreement appears.

- 6. Read the License Agreement. Type **Y** to accept the terms of the license agreement, or type **N** if you do not want to accept the license agreement and want to exit the installation program.
- 7. Press Enter

If you entered Y in the preceding step, information about the installation folder appears.

- 8. Specify the directory where you installed the Hub Server.
  - To choose the default folder, press Enter.
  - To change the path, type the absolute path of the installation folder, and press Enter.
- 9. Confirm the location of the installation folder. Type **Y** to confirm the installation folder, or type **N** to change the installation folder.

The version warning message appears.

- 10. Press Enter to confirm that you want to proceed.
- 11. In WebLogic environments, enter your WebLogic password, and press Enter.
- 12. If you use, or want to use, embedded ActiveVOS for business process management, install the embedded ActiveVOS version that is recommended for this version of Multidomain MDM.

**Note:** If you already have a supported version of ActiveVOS installed, you can skip some of the substeps in this step. Perform substep c. to enter database details and substep 12f. to specify the user name and password for the ActiveVOS Server Administration Console.

- a. Press Enter for y=Yes.
- b. Specify the location where you want to install the ActiveVOS Server.
- Enter the database details that you specified when you created the ActiveVOS database schema, and click Next.

**Note:** If you are moving from standalone ActiveVOS to embedded ActiveVOS, enter the details for the standalone ActiveVOS schema.

- d. Specify the URL that you want to use to call MDM and ActiveVOS web services. Ensure the URL contains the correct port number for the connection to the application server.
- e. On the ActiveVOS Installer page, select **Choose** and browse to the ActiveVOS\_Server installation file in the distribution package.
- f. Enter a user name and password to create an administrative user for the ActiveVOS Server Administration Console.

**Important:** The user name and password must be the same as the ActiveVOS Console user name and password that was created in the application server.

#### 13. Press Enter.

The Informatica platform installation prompt appears.

14. If you want to install the Informatica platform, press **Enter** for Yes. Otherwise, type 2 for No and press **Enter** 

The prompts for the Informatica platform installation response file and archive file locations appear.

- 15. Enter the locations of the Informatica platform installation response file and archive file, and press **Enter**.
- 16. Specify the Product Usage Toolkit options.
  - a. Enter the industry to which the organization belongs, and then press Enter.
  - b. Enter the environment type. Type 1 for Production, type 2 for Test/QA, or type 3 for Development, and then press **Enter**.
- 17. Select whether you have a proxy server. Press **Enter** for Yes. Otherwise, type 2 for No and then press **Enter**.

You can enter the following proxy server details:

- Proxy server name/IP
- Proxy server port
- Proxy server domain name. Leave blank if not applicable.
- Proxy server user name. Leave blank if not applicable.
- Proxy server password. Leave blank if not applicable.

The summary of the installation choices appears.

Select whether to deploy the Hub Server EAR file automatically or manually, and then click Next.

| Option   | Conditions  |
|--|---|
| Yes, run the<br>script during this<br>installation | Deploys the Hub Server EAR file automatically after a successful installation.  Select this option if you use one of the following application server environments with one of the ActiveVOS scenarios:  Application server environments:  JBoss standalone environment  WebSphere standalone environment  ActiveVOS scenarios:  You chose to install ActiveVOS and no other version of ActiveVOS is installed in this environment.  You chose to install ActiveVOS and the environment includes a supported version of ActiveVOS. Check the product availability matrix (PAM) for supported versions.  You chose not to install ActiveVOS.  Important: If you chose to install ActiveVOS but you have an unsupported version of ActiveVOS in your environment, select No, I will run it later. |
| No, I will run it<br>later                         | You package and deploy the Hub Server EAR file manually.  Select this option if you use one of the following application server environments, with or without ActiveVOS:  • WebLogic standalone environment  • WebLogic clustered environment  • JBoss clustered environment  • WebSphere clustered environment  If you are using any application server environment that includes an unsupported version of ActiveVOS, select this option. You must upgrade the ActiveVOS schema to the supported version and then deploy manually.  |

The **Pre-Installation Summary** window appears.

19. Press Enter.

The summary of the upgrade choices appears.

- 20. Verify the information in the pre-upgrade summary. If the information is correct, press **Enter** to start the upgrade. If you need to make changes, type BACK to the specific information and make changes.
  - When the process is complete, the upgrade completion information appears.
- 21. Press Enter to exit the installer.

# Upgrading the Hub Server in Silent Mode

You can upgrade the Hub Server without user interaction in silent mode. You might want to perform a silent upgrade if you have multiple installations, or if you need to upgrade on a machine cluster. A silent upgrade does not show any progress or failure messages.

Before you run the silent upgrade for the Hub Server, you must configure the properties file for the silent upgrade. The installer reads the file to determine the upgrade options. The silent upgrade process might complete successfully even if you provide incorrect settings, such as an incorrect application server path or port. You must ensure that you provide correct settings in the properties file.

Copy the Hub Server upgrade files to the hard disk on the machine where you plan to install the Hub Server. To upgrade in silent mode, complete the following tasks:

- 1. Configure the installation properties file and specify the installation options in the properties file.
- 2. Run the upgrade with the installation properties file.

# Configuring the Properties File

Verify the values of the parameters in the properties file that affect the silent upgrade process.

- 1. Find the properties file that you configured when you installed the Hub Server.
- 2. Use a text editor to open the file and verify the values of the parameters that affect the silent upgrade process.

The following table describes the upgrade parameters to verify:

| Property Name          | Description  |
|------------------------|--|
| USER_INSTALL_DIR       | Directory where you installed the Hub Server.  For example, C\:\\ <mdm directory="" hub="" installation="">\\hub\\server.  You must escape backslash characters in the properties file. Use double backslashes when you specify the installation directory path.</mdm> |
| SIP.APPSERVER.PASSWORD | Password to access WebLogic. For WebLogic environments.  |
| RUN_DEPLOYMENT_FLAG    | Runs the postInstallSetup script as part of the silent upgrade. Set to $1$ if you want to run postInstallSetup at the end of the silent upgrade. Set to $0$ if you do not want to run postInstallSetup.  |

- If you are installing the bundled, licensed version of the ActiveVOS Server, add the ActiveVOS properties to your properties file.
  - Open the silentInstallServer\_sample.properties file that ships with this release.
  - b. Search for ActiveVOS.
  - c. Copy the ActiveVOS Installation section to your properties file.

```
## Do you want to install ActiveVOS (Yes/No)
AVOS.INSTALL=Yes
## Path to ActiveVOS Installer (ActiveVOS_Server_windows_9.2.4.3.exe for Windows
or ActiveVOS Server unix 9.2.4.3.sh for Linux/UNIX)
AVOS INSTALLER PATH=c\:\\\ActiveVOS Server windows 9.2.4.3.exe
## ActiveVOS server install directory
AVOS INSTALL DIR=C\:\\infamdm\\avos\\server
## Database type is the same as for HUB (There is no ability to set a different
database type for ActiveVOS)
## Oracle connection data
## Connection Type SID or Service Name
AVOS.ORACLE.CONNECTION.TYPE="Service Name"
AVOS.DB.SERVER=localhost
AVOS.DB.PORT=1521
## Oracle SID name or service name
AVOS.DB.SID=orcl
AVOS.DB.SCHEMA NAME=avos
```

```
AVOS.DB.PASSWORD=!!cmx!!
## DB2 connection data
AVOS.DB.SERVER=localhost
AVOS.DB.PORT=50000
AVOS.DB.DBNAME=AVOS
AVOS.DB.SCHEMA NAME=AVOS
AVOS.DB.USER=avos
AVOS.DB.PASSWORD=!!cmx!!
## MSSQL connection data
AVOS.DB.SERVER=localhost
AVOS.DB.PORT=1433
AVOS.DB.DBNAME=avos
AVOS . DB . USER=avos
AVOS.DB.PASSWORD=!!cmx!!
##If you are moving from standalone ActiveVOS to embedded ActiveVOS, enter the
details for the standalone ActiveVOS schema.
```

- d. In your properties file, specify the information for your ActiveVOS database and remove the properties for the other supported databases. If you need help with properties, see the *Multidomain MDM Installation Guide* for your environment.
- 4. If you are installing the Informatica Platform, add and configure the following Informatica Platform properties to the silent installation properties file:

```
## If you want to install Informatica Platform, set to 1
## If you DO NOT want to install Informatica Platform, set to 0
INSTALL.PLATFORM.YES=1
## Path to the Informatica Platform installer (zip or tar file)
INFA.PLATFORM.ZIP=C\:\\961HF1_Server_Installer_winem-64t.zip
## For UNIX: INFA.PLATFORM.ZIP=/export/home/user/961HF1_Server_Installer_linux-
x64.tar
## Path to silent installer properties file
INFA.PLATFORM.PROPERTIES=C\:\\SilentInput.properties
```

5. Add and configure the following product usage toolkit properties to the silent installation properties file:

```
#Product Usage Toolkit Installation
#CSM TYPE is the type of Product Usage Toolkit installation.
# valid values are: Production, Test, Development. Should not be blank.
CSM TYPE=Production
# If the network has a proxy server, fill in the following parameters (leave empty
if no proxy):
# proxy server host
CSM HOST=
# proxy server port
CSM PORT=
# Proxy server domain name (leave blank, if not applicable)
CSM DOMAIN=
# Proxy server user name (leave blank, if not applicable)
CSM PROXY USER NAME=
#Proxy server password (leave blank, if not applicable)
CSM PROXY PASSWORD=
```

6. If you use the licensed version of ActiveVOS server, add and configure the following properties in the silent installation properties file:

```
SIP.APPSERVER.WEB.URL=http://localhost:8080  
## Avos console's administrator username  
AVOS.CONSOLE.USER=aeadmin  
## Avos console's administrator password  
AVOS.CONSOLE.PASSWORD=admin  
##The user name and password must be the same as the ActiveVOS Console user name and  
password  
that was created in the application server during the pre-installation process.
```

## Running the Silent Upgrade

After you configure the properties file, you can start the silent upgrade.

- 1. Ensure that the application server is running.
- 2. Open a command window.
- 3. Run the following command:

```
On UNIX../hub_install.bin -f <location of silent properties file for hub server>
On Windows.hub install.exe -f <location of silent properties file for hub server>
```

The silent upgrade runs in the background. The process can take a while. If you ran the postInstallSetup script for the Hub Server as part of the silent installation, check the postinstallSetup.log files to verify that the upgrade was successful.

The log file is available in the following directory:

```
\textbf{On UNIX}. < \texttt{MDM Hub installation directory} > /\texttt{hub/server/logs} /
```

On Windows. <MDM Hub installation directory>\hub\server\logs\

# Run the patchInstallSetup Script

If you chose to deploy manually during the Hub Server installation, you must run the patchInstallSetup script.

- 1. Navigate to the following directory: <MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/server
- Run the following command to deploy the Hub Server application and apply changes to the application server configuration.

#### On UNIX

**Note:** On UNIX, if you include an exclamation mark (!) character in the password, you must include a backslash before the exclamation mark (!) character. For example, if the password is !!cmx!!, enter \!\!cmx\!\!.

#### WebLogic

```
patchInstallSetup.sh -Dweblogic.password=<WebLogic password> -
Ddatabase.password=<MDM Hub Master database password>
-Davos.username=<ActiveVOS Console username> -Davos.password=<ActiveVOS Console
password> -Davos.jdbc.database.password=<ActiveVOS database password>
```

**Important:** In a WebLogic 12.2.1.3 or later environment, if you decided to install ActiveVOS or if you decided to use the WebLogic T3S protocol, add the options that match your decisions:

- ActiveVOS installed. -Dinstall.avos.patch=true
- T3S protocol used. -Dweblogic.naming.protocol=t3s

### WebSphere with security enabled

```
patchInstallSetup.sh -Dwebsphere.password=<WebSphere password> -
Ddatabase.password=<MDM Hub Master database password> -Davos.username=<ActiveVOS
Console username> -Davos.password=<ActiveVOS Console password> -
Davos.jdbc.database.password=<ActiveVOS database password>
```

#### WebSphere with security disabled

```
patchInstallSetup.sh -Ddatabase.password=<MDM Hub Master database password> -
Davos.username=<ActiveVOS Console username> -Davos.password=<ActiveVOS Console
password> -Davos.jdbc.database.password=<ActiveVOS database password>
```

#### **JBoss**

patchInstallsetup.sh -Ddatabase.password=<MDM Hub Master database password> Davos.username=<ActiveVOS Console username> -Davos.password=<ActiveVOS Console
password> -Davos.jdbc.database.password=<ActiveVOS database password>

#### On Windows

#### WebLogic

patchInstallSetup.bat -Dweblogic.password=<WebLogic password> Ddatabase.password=<MDM Hub Master database password> -Davos.username=<ActiveVOS
Console username> -Davos.password=<ActiveVOS Console password> Davos.jdbc.database.password=<ActiveVOS database password>

**Important:** In a WebLogic 12.2.1.3 or later environment, if you decided to install ActiveVOS or if you decided to use the WebLogic T3S protocol, add the options that match your decisions:

- ActiveVOS installed. -Dinstall.avos.patch=true
- T3S protocol used. -Dweblogic.naming.protocol=t3s

#### WebSphere with security enabled

patchInstallSetup.bat -Dwebsphere.password=<WebSphere password> Ddatabase.password=<MDM Hub Master database password> -Davos.username=<ActiveVOS
Console username> -Davos.password=<ActiveVOS Console password> Davos.jdbc.database.password=<ActiveVOS database password>

#### WebSphere with security disabled

patchInstallSetup.bat -Ddatabase.password=<MDM Hub Master database password> Davos.username=<ActiveVOS Console username> -Davos.password=<ActiveVOS Console
password> -Davos.jdbc.database.password=<ActiveVOS database password>

#### JBoss

patchInstallsetup.bat -Ddatabase.password=<MDM Hub Master database password> Davos.username=<ActiveVOS Console username> -Davos.password=<ActiveVOS Console
password> -Davos.jdbc.database.password=<ActiveVOS database password>

# Copy Hub Server Log Files to the Upgrade Documentation Folder

Save a copy of the Hub Server log files. Use these log files assist if you need to troubleshoot the upgrade.

Copy the Hub Server log files to the upgradedoc upgrade documentation folder. Save these files in a separate subfolder, such as hub\_server\_upgrade. If you upgraded multiple Hub Servers in a cluster, save the files for each Hub Server instance in a separate folder.

The following table describes the log files to copy:

| File   | Description   |
|--|---|
| <pre><mdm directory="" hub="" installation="">/hub/server/ Infamdm_Hub_Server_InstallLog.xml</mdm></pre> | Contains log messages for the Hub Server installation.  |
| <pre><mdm directory="" hub="" installation="">/hub/server/ infamdm_installer_debug.txt</mdm></pre>       | Contains debug messages and all the options that you selected when you ran the upgrade process. |
| <pre><mdm directory="" hub="" installation="">/hub/server/ logs/patchInstallSetup.log</mdm></pre>        | Contains the patchInstallSetup script results.  |

| File  | Description  |
|---|--|
| <pre><mdm directory="" hub="" installation="">/hub/server/ logs/cmxserver.log</mdm></pre> | Contains the Hub Server log. The Hub Server creates this file when you start the Hub Server. |
| Application server log files.   | Located in the tree under the installation directory for the application server.             |

# Reapplying the Hub Server Upgrade (Optional)

If you complete the Hub Server upgrade, the upgrade process does not allow you to reapply the Hub Server upgrade. For example, you might want to reapply the Hub Server upgrade if hardware fails during the upgrade process. You can also perform this procedure if you test an upgrade and then want to revert to an earlier version of the software.

- 1. Back up the siperian-mrm.ear file in the following directory:
  - On UNIX. <MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/server
  - On Windows. <MDM Hub installation directory>\hub\server
- 2. Repeat the upgrade steps. Add the parameter -DSIPERIAN\_FORCED\_PATCH\_INSTALL=true to the install command.

For example, if you reapply the upgrade in graphical mode in UNIX, run the following command:

hub install.bin -DSIPERIAN FORCED PATCH INSTALL=true

# CHAPTER 7

# Process Server Upgrade (In-place Upgrade)

This chapter includes the following topics:

- Process Server Upgrade Overview, 99
- · Upgrading the Process Server in Graphical Mode, 99
- Upgrading the Process Server in Console Mode, 101
- Upgrading the Process Server in Silent Mode, 103
- Steps to Upgrade to Informatica Address Verification 5 Integration, 104
- Configure Match Population, 106
- Copy Process Server Log Files to the Upgrade Documentation Directory, 108
- Reapplying the Process Server Upgrade (Optional), 109

# **Process Server Upgrade Overview**

The Process Server is a servlet that handles data cleansing operations, match operations, and batch jobs. To upgrade the Process Server, run the Process Server installer provided in the distribution. The Process Server installer differentiates an upgrade from a full installation when you select the existing MDM Hub installation location as the target location during the upgrade process. Before overwriting the existing Process Server installation, the Process Server Installer creates a backup of critical files.

**Note:** This chapter is for an in-place upgrade only. For a clean upgrade, install the Process Server by following the instructions in the *Multidomain MDM Installation Guide* for your application server and database environment.

# Upgrading the Process Server in Graphical Mode

To upgrade the Process Server in graphical mode, run the Process Server installer.

- 1. Log in using the user name that was used to install the Process Server.
- 2. Start the application server on which the Process Server is deployed.

- Open a command prompt and navigate to the Process Server installer in the distribution directory. By default the installer is in the following directory:
  - On UNIX. <MDM Hub distribution directory><operating system name>/mrmcleanse
  - On Windows. <MDM Hub distribution directory>\windows\mrmcleanse
- 4. Run the following command:
  - On UNIX. hub\_cleanse\_install.bin
  - On Windows. hub cleanse install.exe
- 5. From the Introduction window, click Next.

The License Agreement window appears.

6. Select the I accept the terms of the License Agreement option, and then click Next.

The Choose Install Folder window appears.

- 7. Select the location of the Process Server installation. The Process Server installation folder contains the siperian-mrm-cleanse.ear file.
  - To choose the default location, click Next.
  - To choose another location, click Choose, and then click Next.

The Version Warning message appears.

8. Click **OK** to confirm that you want to proceed.

The Enter Location of License File window appears.

- 9. Select the location of the license file, and then click Next.
- 10. If the previous installation uses WebLogic as the application server, the Process Server Installer prompts you to provide the WebLogic Admin password. Enter the WebLogic password.
- 11. On the Product Usage Toolkit page, select the Environment Type.
- If you have a proxy server, select Yes, and enter the proxy server details. Otherwise, select No, and click Next.

You can enter the following proxy server details:

- · Proxy server name/IP
- Proxy server port
- Proxy server domain name. Leave blank if not applicable.
- · Proxy server user name. Leave blank if not applicable.
- Proxy server password. Leave blank if not applicable.
- 13. Click Next.

The Deploy page appears.

- 14. Select whether to deploy automatically or manually. click Yes to deploy automatically, or click No to deploy manually, and then click Next.
  - On WebSphere standalone environments or JBoss standalone environments, click Yes to deploy automatically, and then click Next.
  - On WebLogic or clustered environments, click No to deploy manually, and then click Next.

The Pre-Installation Summary window appears.

- 15. To change any options, click the Previous button to change your previous selections.
- 16. After the summary window displays the options you want, click Install to start the installation process.

The Process Server installer displays the **Please Wait** screen while the installer configures the system. The Process Server installer backs up critical files to an archive that is stored in the backup folder in the MDM Hub installation directory. The file name of the archive uses the format shown in the following example:

```
Siperian Hub Cleanse Match Server-2010-05-12 18-09.jar
```

When the installation completes, the **Install Complete** window appears.

17. Click **Done** to exit the Process Server installer.

**Note:** If the upgrade does not complete successfully, a window appears that states that the upgrade failed and displays the location of the log file that contains the failure messages.

- 18. If you selected **No** in step 14, repackage and manually deploy the EAR file.
  - a. Run the following command to repackage the EAR file:

```
On UNIX
```

```
cd <MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/cleanse/bin
./sip ant.sh repackage
```

#### On Windows.

```
cd \MDM\ Hub installation directory>\hub\cleanse\bin sip ant.bat repackage
```

- From the application server administration console, manually deploy the Process Server EAR file.
   Refer to the application server documentation.
- 19. Copy the SSA-Name3 library files from <MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/cleanse/lib/upgrade/SSA to <MDM Hub installation directory>hub/cleanse/lib.
- 20. Restart the application server.

# Upgrading the Process Server in Console Mode

You can upgrade the Process Server in console mode on UNIX.

**Note:** Do not use the root user when you upgrade the Process Server on RedHat Linux. The root user does not have a .profile, which InstallAnywhere requires. Instead, create and use a separate user profile to upgrade the Process Server.

- 1. Start the application server.
- 2. Navigate to the following directory in the MDM Hub distribution:

```
On Solaris. <MDM Hub distribution directory>/solaris/mrmcleanse
On HP-UX. <MDM Hub distribution directory>/hpux/mrmcleanse
On Linux. <MDM Hub distribution directory>/linux/mrmcleanse
On AIX. <MDM Hub distribution directory>/aix/mrmcleanse
```

3. Run the following command from the command prompt:

```
./hub cleanse install.bin -i console
```

4. Enter the number of the locale you want to choose for the installation, and then press Enter.

The introduction information about the installation appears.

5. Press Enter.

The license agreement appears.

- 6. Read the License Agreement. Type **Y** to accept the license agreement, or type **N** if you do not want to accept the license agreement and want to exit the installation program.
- 7. Press Enter.

If you entered Y in the preceding step, information about the installation folder appears.

- 8. Specify the directory where you installed the Process Server.
  - To choose the default location, press Enter.
  - To change the path, type the absolute path of the installation folder, and press Enter.
- Confirm the location of the installation folder. Type Y to confirm the installation folder, or type N to change the installation folder.

The version warning message appears.

10. Press Enter to confirm that you want to proceed.

The prompt for the license file location appears.

- 11. Enter the absolute path of the license file, and press **Enter**.
- 12. In WebLogic environments, enter your WebLogic password, and press Enter.
- 13. From the Product Usage Toolkit options, select the environment type. Type 1 for Production, type 2 for Test/QA, or type 3 for Development, and then press **Enter**.
- 14. Select whether you have a proxy server. Press **Enter** for Yes. Otherwise, type 2 for No and then press **Enter**

You can enter the following proxy server details:

- · Proxy server name/IP
- · Proxy server port
- Proxy server domain name. Leave blank if not applicable.
- Proxy server user name. Leave blank if not applicable.
- Proxy server password. Leave blank if not applicable.

The summary of the installation choices appears.

- 15. Choose whether you want to run the postInstallSetup script as part of the installation, or run it manually later.
- 16. Press Enter.

The summary of the upgrade choices appears.

17. Verify the information in the pre-upgrade summary. If the information is correct, press **Enter** to start the upgrade. If you need to make changes, type BACK to the specific information and make changes.

When the process is complete, the upgrade completion information appears.

18. Press **Enter** to exit the installer.

# Upgrading the Process Server in Silent Mode

You can upgrade the Process Server without user interaction in silent mode. You might want to perform a silent upgrade if you have multiple installations, or if you need to upgrade on a machine cluster. A silent upgrade does not show any progress or failure messages.

Before you run the silent upgrade for the Process Server, you must configure the properties file for the silent upgrade. The installer reads the file to determine the upgrade options. The silent upgrade process might complete successfully even if you provide incorrect settings, such as an incorrect application server path or port setting. You must ensure that you provide correct settings in the properties file.

Copy the Process Server upgrade files to the hard disk on the machine where you plan to upgrade the Process Server. To upgrade in silent mode, complete the following tasks:

- 1. Configure the installation properties file and specify the installation options in the properties file.
- 2. Run the upgrade with the installation properties file.

## Configuring the Properties File

Verify the values of the parameters in the properties file that affect the silent upgrade process.

- 1. Find the properties file that you configured when you installed the Process Server.
- Use a text editor to open the file and verify the values of the parameters that affect the silent upgrade process.

The following table describes the upgrade parameters to verify:

| Property Name          | Description   |  |
|------------------------|---|--|
| USER_INSTALL_DIR       | Directory where you installed the Process Server.   |  |
|                        | For example, C\:\\ <mdm directory="" hub="" installation="">\\cleanse.</mdm>  |  |
|                        | You must escape backslash characters in the properties file. Use double backslashes when you specify the installation directory path.   |  |
| SIP.APPSERVER.PASSWORD | Password to access WebLogic. For WebLogic environments.   |  |
| RUN_DEPLOYMENT_FLAG    | Runs the postInstallSetup script as part of the silent upgrade. Set to $1$ if you want to run postInstallSetup at the end of the silent upgrade. Set to $0$ if you do not want to run postInstallSetup. |  |

3. Add and configure the following product usage toolkit properties to the silent installation properties file:

```
#Product Usage Toolkit Installation
#CSM TYPE is the type of Product Usage Toolkit installation.
# valid values are: Production, Test, Development. Should not be blank.
CSM TYPE=Production
# If the network haa a proxy server, fill in the following parameters (leave empty
if no proxy):
# proxy server host
CSM HOST=
# proxy server port
CSM PORT=
# Proxy server domain name (leave blank, if not applicable)
CSM DOMAIN=
# Proxy server user name (leave blank, if not applicable)
CSM PROXY USER NAME=
#Proxy server password (leave blank, if not applicable)
CSM PROXY PASSWORD=
```

## Running the Process Server Silent Upgrade

After you configure the properties file, you can start the silent upgrade.

- 1. Ensure that the application server is running.
- 2. Open a command window.
- 3. Run the following command:

```
On UNIX../hub_cleanse_install.bin -f <location of silent properties file for process
server>
```

```
On Windows.hub_cleanse_install.exe -f <location of silent properties file for process
server>
```

The silent upgrade runs in the background. The process can take a while. If you ran the post install script for the Process Server as part of the silent installation, check the postinstallSetup.log files to verify that the upgrade was successful.

The log file is available in the following directory:

```
On UNIX. <MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/cleanse/logs/
```

On Windows. <MDM Hub installation directory>\hub\cleanse\logs\

# Steps to Upgrade to Informatica Address Verification 5 Integration

This section describes the upgrade process required for the MDM Hub implementation to use Informatica Address Verification 5.

Note: This section is applicable to users with a license for using Informatica Address Verification.

You must perform the following steps to upgrade to Informatica Address Verification 5 integration:

1. Open the cmxcleanse.properties file.This file is located at:

UNIX: <infamdm\_install\_directory>/hub/cleanse/resources

2. Ensure that the following Informatica Address Verification 5 properties are set in the cmxcleanse.properties files:

#### Windows:

```
cleanse.library.addressDoctor.property.SetConfigFile=C:\infamdm\hub\cleanse\resources
\AddressDoctor\5\SetConfig.xml
cleanse.library.addressDoctor.property.ParametersFile=C:\infamdm\hub\cleanse
\resources
\AddressDoctor\5\Parameters.xml
cleanse.library.addressDoctor.property.DefaultCorrectionType=PARAMETERS DEFAULT
```

#### UNIX:

```
cleanse.library.addressDoctor.property.SetConfigFile=/u1/infamdm/hub/cleanse/
resources/
AddressDoctor/5/SetConfig.xml
cleanse.library.addressDoctor.property.ParametersFile=/u1/infamdm/hub/cleanse/
resources/
AddressDoctor/5/Parameters.xml
cleanse.library.addressDoctor.property.DefaultCorrectionType=PARAMETERS DEFAULT
```

Save and close the properties file.

4. Copy SetConfig.xml and Parameters.xml to the location specified in the cmxcleanse.properties file.

The following is a sample SetConfig.xml file:

```
<!DOCTYPE SetConfig SYSTEM 'SetConfig.dtd'>
    <SetConfig>
        <General WriteXMLEncoding="UTF-16" WriteXMLBOM="NEVER"</pre>
        MaxMemoryUsageMB="600" MaxAddressObjectCount="10" MaxThreadCount="10" />
        <UnlockCode>79FYL9UAXAVSR0KLV1TDC6PAOVVC3KM14FZC
        <DataBase CountryISO3="ALL" Type="BATCH INTERACTIVE" Path="c:\addressdoctor\5"</pre>
            PreloadingType="NONE" />
        <DataBase CountryISO3="ALL" Type="FASTCOMPLETION" Path="c:\addressdoctor\5"</pre>
            PreloadingType="NONE" />
        <DataBase CountryISO3="ALL" Type="CERTIFIED" Path="c:\addressdoctor\5"</pre>
            PreloadingType="NONE" />
        <DataBase CountryISO3="ALL" Type="GEOCODING" Path="c:\addressdoctor\5"</pre>
            PreloadingType="NONE" />
            <DataBase CountryISO3="ALL" Type="SUPPLEMENTARY" Path="c:\addressdoctor\5"</pre>
            PreloadingType="NONE" />
    </SetConfig>
The following is a sample Parameters.xml file:
    <?xml version="1.0" encoding="iso-8859-1"?>
    <!DOCTYPE Parameters SYSTEM 'Parameters.dtd'>
    <Parameters
        WriteXMLEncoding="UTF-16"
        WriteXMLBOM="NEVER">
        <Process
            Mode="BATCH"
            EnrichmentGeoCoding="ON"
            EnrichmentCASS="ON"
            EnrichmentSERP="ON"
            EnrichmentSNA="ON"
            {\tt EnrichmentSupplementaryGB="ON"}
            EnrichmentSupplementaryUS="ON" />
        <Input
            Encoding="UTF-16"
            FormatType="ALL"
            FormatWithCountry="ON"
            FormatDelimiter="PIPE" />
        <Result
```

5. Specify the Informatica Address Verification 5 unlock code in the configuration file, SetConfig.xml.

For more information about the SetConfig.xml file and Parameters.xml file, refer to your Informatica Address Verification 5 documentation.

6. Copy the Informatica Address Verification 5 library from the following location:

```
Windows: <infamdm_install_directory>\hub\cleanse\lib\upgrade\AddressDoctor
```

UNIX: <infamdm\_install\_directory>/hub/cleanse/lib/upgrade/AddressDoctor

7. Replace JADE.dll (or equivalent Informatica Address Verification 4 library) with the Informatica Address Verification 5 library at the following location:

```
Windows: <infamdm_install_directory>\hub\cleanse\lib
UNIX: <infamdm_install_directory>/hub/cleanse/lib
```

AddressElements="STANDARD"

Encoding="UTF-16"
CountryType="NAME\_EN"
FormatDelimiter="PIPE" />

</Parameters>

For more information, refer to the <code>libupdate\_readme.txt</code> document available at:

**Windows:** <infamdm install directory>\hub\cleanse\lib\upgrade

UNIX: <infamdm install directory>/hub/cleanse/lib/upgrade

8. Restart the application server.

Ensure that you are logged in with the same user name that is currently running the application server and that no exceptions occur while starting the application server.

9. Restart the Process Server.

During the Process Server initialization, you should see a message similar to the following in the terminal console:

[INFO ] com.siperian.mrm.cleanse.addressDoctor.Library: Initializing AddressDoctor5

- 10. Start the Cleanse Functions tool.
- 11. Obtain a write lock (Write Lock > Acquire Lock).
- 12. Select the Informatica Address Verification cleanse function.
- 13. Click the Refresh button.

The Informatica Address Verification 5 cleanse function is added to the Informatica Address Verification cleanse functions node.

# **Configure Match Population**

The match population contains the standard population set to use for the match process. Each supported country, language, or population has a standard population set. You must enable the match population to use for the match rules.

The match population is available as a <code>population.ysp</code> file with the Informatica MDM Hub installation. The population name is the same as the ysp file name. If you add a Japanese population, and want to use the Person\_Name\_Kanji match field, add \_Kanji to the population name. For example, Japan\_Kanji or Japan\_i\_Kanji. If you do this, the standard Person\_Name match field is not available.

The population that you use must be compatible with the SSA-Name3 version of the MDM Hub. If you need additional population files or if you need an updated population file to upgrade to a later version, contact Informatica Global Customer Support. The first population file that you request with the product is free. You might need population files for other countries or you might need an updated population file to upgrade to a later version of the MDM Hub.

#### Upgrading custom population files

During the upgrade process, the population files are upgraded. If you have customized your population files, contact Informatica Global Customer Support to have the customizations applied to the upgraded properties file.

# **Enabling Match Population**

You must enable the match population to use for the match rules.

1. Copy the <population>.ysp files to the following location:

On UNIX. <MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/cleanse/resources/match

On Windows. <MDM Hub installation directory>\hub\cleanse\resources\match

2. In the C\_REPOS\_SSA\_POPULATION metadata table, verify that the population is registered.

The seed database for the MDM Hub installation has some populations registered in the C\_REPOS\_SSA\_POPULATION table, but not enabled.

If the C\_REPOS\_SSA\_POPULATION table does not contain the population, add it to the table and enable it.

The population name is the same as the ysp file name. For example, if the ysp file name is us.ysp, the population name is Us.ysp, the

To add the population to an Operational Reference Store, use the following steps:

On IBM DB2 or Oracle.

- a. Connect to the Operational Reference Store schema that you want to add the population to.
- b. In SQL\*Plus, run the add std ssa population.sql script in the following directory:

On UNIX. <MDM Hub installation directory>/server/resources/database/custom\_scripts/oracle

 $\begin{tabular}{ll} On Windows. < MDM & Hub installation directory>\server\resources\database\custom\_scripts \\ \label{table} \end{tabular}$ 

c. Answer the prompts described in the following table:

| Prompt  | Description  |
|---|--|
| Enter the population to add   | Name of the population.  |
| Enter a value for ROWID_SSA_POP<br>(example: INFA.0001) DEFAULT [INFA.<br>0001] | Unique value for the ROWID_SSA_POP column of the C_REPOS_SSA_POPULATION metadata table. Default is INFA.0001 |

The population is registered in the C\_REPOS\_SSA\_POPULATION table.

d. Run the following command to enable the population:

```
UPDATE c_repos_ssa_population SET enabled_ind = 1 WHERE population_name = '<Your
Population> ';
COMMIT;
```

#### On Microsoft SQL Server

a. Run the add std ssa population.bat script in the following directory:

<MDM Hub installation directory>\server\resources\database\custom scripts\MSSQL

b. Answer the prompts described in the following table:

| Prompt  | Description                                     |
|---|---|
| Hostname with MSSQL instance for CMX_ORS DB ("localhost") | Host name of the Microsoft SQL Server instance. |
| cmx_ors user name ("cmx_ors")                             | User name of the Operational Reference Store.   |
| cmx_ors user password                                     | Password of the Operational Reference Store.    |

| Prompt  | Description   |
|---|---|
| Enter the population name (Note: If you use Person_Name_Kanji for the Japan population or Japan_i population, add the suffix '_Kanji' to the end of the name) DEFAULT (" ") | Name of the population.   |
| Enter a value for ROWID_SSA_POP (example: INFA. 0001) DEFAULT (INFA.0001)   | Unique value for the ROWID_SSA_POP column of the C_REPOS_SSA_POPULATION metadata table. |

The population is registered in the C\_REPOS\_SSA\_POPULATION table.

c. Run the following command to enable the population:

```
USE <Operational Reference Store user>
GO
UPDATE [dbo].[C_REPOS_SSA_POPULATION] SET ENABLED_IND = 1 WHERE POPULATION_NAME
= '<population>'
```

- 4. Restart the Process Server.
- Log in to the Hub Console to verify that the population is enabled.
   The population appears in the Match/Merge Setup user interface for base objects.

# Copy Process Server Log Files to the Upgrade Documentation Directory

Save a copy of the Hub Server log files. Use these log files assist if you need to troubleshoot the upgrade.

Copy the Process Server log files to the upgrade documentation folder. Save these files in a separate subfolder, such as <code>cleanse\_match\_server\_upgrade</code>. If you upgraded multiple Process Servers in a cluster, save the files for each Process Server instance in a separate folder.

The following table describes the log files to copy:

| File   | Description   |
|--|---|
| <pre><cleanse directory="" installation="">/hub/cleanse/ Infamdm_Hub_Cleanse_Match_Server_InstallLog.xml</cleanse></pre> | Contains log files for the Process Server installation.   |
| <pre><cleanse directory="" installation="">/hub/cleanse/ infamdm_installer_debug.txt</cleanse></pre>                     | Contains debug messages and all the options that you selected when you ran the upgrade process. |
| <pre><cleanse directory="" installation="">/hub/cleanse/logs/ patchInstallSetup.log</cleanse></pre>                      | Contains the patchInstallSetup script results.  |
| <pre><cleanse directory="" installation="">/hub/cleanse/logs/ cmxserver.log</cleanse></pre>                              | Contains the Process Server logs.   |
| Application server log files.  | Located in the tree under the installation directory for the application server.                |

# Reapplying the Process Server Upgrade (Optional)

If you complete the Process Server upgrade, the upgrade process does not allow you to reapply the Process Server upgrade. For example, you might want to reapply the Process Server upgrade if hardware fails during the upgrade process. You can also perform this procedure if you test an upgrade and then want to revert to an earlier version of the software.

- Back up the siperian-mrm.ear file in the following directory:
  - On UNIX. <MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/cleanse
  - On Windows. <MDM Hub installation directory>\hub\cleanse
- Repeat the upgrade steps. Add the parameter -DSIPERIAN\_FORCED\_PATCH\_INSTALL=true to the install command.

For example, if you reapply the upgrade in graphical mode in UNIX, run the following command:

hub\_cleanse\_install.bin -DSIPERIAN\_FORCED\_PATCH\_INSTALL=true

## CHAPTER 8

# Resource Kit Upgrade (In-place Upgrade)

This chapter includes the following topics:

- Resource Kit Upgrade Overview, 110
- Uninstalling the Resource Kit (In-place Upgrade), 110
- Installing the Resource Kit, 111

## Resource Kit Upgrade Overview

To upgrade to the current version of the Resource Kit, perform a full installation of the Resource Kit. You cannot perform a patch installation of the Resource Kit.

- 1. If you are performing an in-place upgrade, uninstall the Resource Kit.
- 2. Install the current version of the Resource Kit.

# Uninstalling the Resource Kit (In-place Upgrade)

To remove the installed version of the Resource Kit, you must run the uninstaller. The uninstaller is located in the Resource Kit directory.

- 1. Start the application server.
- 2. Open a command prompt and navigate to the following directory:

```
On UNIX. <Resource Kit installation directory>/deploy/UninstallerData
```

On Windows. <Resource Kit installation directory>\deploy\UninstallerData

3. Run the following command:

```
On UNIX. Uninstall_Informatica_MDM_Hub_Resource_Kit.bin
```

On Windows. Uninstall Informatica MDM Hub Resource Kit.exe

4. Click Uninstall.

The Uninstall Complete window appears.

- 5. Uninstall the previous version of the Resource Kit.
- 6. Click Done.

# Installing the Resource Kit

After you uninstall the Resource Kit, install the current version of the Resource Kit.

- 1. Start the application server.
- Navigate to the Resource Kit installer in the distribution directory. By default the installer is in the following directory:

On UNIX. <MDM Hub distribution directory>/<operating system name>/mrmresourcekit

On Windows. <MDM Hub distribution directory>\windows\mrmresourcekit

Run the following command:

On UNIX. hub resourcekit install.bin

On Windows. hub resourcekit install.exe

4. Select the language for the installation, and then click **OK**.

The Introduction window appears.

Click Next.

The **License Agreement** window appears.

6. Select the I accept the terms of the License Agreement option, and then click Next.

The Installation Feature window appears.

7. Select the Resource Kit features that you want to install and click Next.

You can choose the following Resource Kit features:

#### Sample Schema

Select this option to install the Sample Schema. You must create a sample schema and register it with the Hub Server before you install the sample applications.

#### **Samples and Utilities**

Select this option to install the sample applications and utilities.

The list of sample applications deployed is stored in the build.properties file.

The build.properties file is located in the following directory: <MDM Hub installation directory>hub\resourcekit\samples

#### SIF SDK and Javadocs

Select this option to install the javadocs, libraries, and resources associated with the SIF SDK.

#### **BPM SDK**

Select this option to install the resources associated with the BPM SDK.

#### **Jaspersoft**

Select this option to copy the Jaspersoft installer to the Resource Kit home.

#### SSA-NAME3

Select this option to copy the SSA-NAME3 installer to the Resource Kit home.

The Choose Install Folder window appears.

- 8. Select the location of the Resource Kit installation.
  - · To choose the default location, click Next.
  - To enter a path, type the path to the installation folder, and click Next.

Note: The installation fails if you specify a path that has spaces in a folder name.

- To return to the default installation location, click Restore Default Folder.
- To choose another location, click Choose, and then click Next.

On UNIX, the **Choose Link Folder** window appears. On Windows, the **Choose Shortcut Folder** window appears.

Select the location to create a product icon or link, or select the option not to create a product icon or link, and click Next.

The Configuration Selection window appears.

10. Select a configuration option, and click Next.

You can choose the following configuration options:

#### **Configure Samples**

Configures the samples.

#### **Source Only**

Installs the sources of samples.

If you select **Configure samples**, the **Resource Kit App Server** window appears. If you select **Source only**, the **Pre-Installation Summary** window appears.

11. From the **Resource Kit App Server** window, select the application server on which you want to install the Resource Kit, and click **Next**.

The **Application Server Home** window for the application server that you select appears.

- 12. Configure the application server settings.
  - · Configure the JBoss settings:
    - 1. Specify the application server installation directory, and then click **Next**.

The JBoss Application Server Configuration Name window appears.

2. Specify the Configuration Name, and then click Next.

The default value is standalone.

- 3. Specify the remote port.
- · Configure the WebLogic settings:
  - Choose a path to the WebLogic domain installation directory for the domain you want to use for the MDM Hub, and click Next.

The WebLogic Application Server Login window appears.

2. Enter WebLogic Server login information.

You can configure the following login parameters:

#### Host

Name of the host computer that has the WebLogic installation.

#### Server

Name of the WebLogic Server instance in the domain on which WebLogic is deployed.

#### **User Name**

Name of the user for the WebLogic installation.

#### Password

Password that corresponds to the WebLogic user.

#### **Port Number**

Port number on which the WebLogic Server is listening.

- · Configure the WebSphere settings:
  - 1. Choose a path to the WebSphere application server, and click Next.

The **Reminder** window appears.

2. Ensure that you have fulfilled the prerequisites and click **OK**.

The WebSphere Security Selection window appears.

3. Select whether WebSphere is security enabled or not, and click Next.

If you select **No**, and then click **Next**, the **WebSphere Application Server Port** window appears. Default is **No**.

Set the server name, and the RMI and SOAP ports for the WebSphere application server. In a clustered environment, enter one of the cluster server names and its corresponding SOAP and RMI port information.

If you select **Yes**, and then click **Next**, the **WebSphere Application Server Port and User Credentials** window appears. Specify the WebSphere user name and the WebSphere password.

The Informatica MDM Hub Server window appears.

13. Enter the information for the Hub Server installation, and click Next.

You can specify the following Hub Server information:

#### **Server Name**

Name of the server that hosts the Hub Server.

#### **Server HTTP Port**

Port number of the Hub Server.

#### Informatica MDM Administrative password

Password to access the MDM Hub.

The Resource Kit ORS ID window appears.

14. Select a Resource Kit ORS ID from the list, and click Next.

The list contains the Operational Reference Store IDs that you created. Select an Operational Reference Store ID related to the Sample Schema.

If you did not register the sample schema, the Operational Reference Store ID for the Sample schema does not appear. Register the sample Operational Reference Store, and then restart the installation.

The **Deployment Selection** window appears.

15. Select a deployment option, and then click **Next**:

You can select one of the following deployment options:

Yes, run it during this installation.

Deploys and configures the Resource Kit during the installation.

#### No, it can be deployed later.

Select this option to deploy and configure manually at a later time.

If you chose to install the Samples and Utilities feature, deploy and configure the Resource Kit in this installation step. If you do not deploy and configure the Resource Kit in this installation step, you cannot make changes and redeploy the samples using the postInstallSetup script.

If you choose to run the post-install setup manually, you cannot deploy the EAR file using the postInstallSetup script at a later time. You must manually edit the EAR file and deploy it to make any changes to your installation.

The Pre-Installation Summary window appears.

- 16. Review the pre-Installation summary to confirm your installation choices, and then click Install.
  - When the installation completes, the **Install Complete** window appears.
- 17. Click **Done** to exit the Resource Kit installer.

## CHAPTER 9

# Post-Upgrade Tasks

This chapter includes the following topics:

- Post-Upgrade Tasks, 115
- Update Properties, 116
- JBoss Post-Upgrade Tasks, 116
- Restart the MDM Hub Environment, 116
- Perform Post-Upgrade Tasks for In-place Upgrade, 117
- Validate the Data, 117
- Drop Objects, Columns, and References to Deprecated Objects, 121
- Run the PostInstall Script for Deploying the Hub Server (Conditional), 122
- Configure WebSphere Administrative Security, 123
- Configure Cleanse Functions for Platform Transformations, 130
- Validate the Upgraded Metadata, 131
- Review the MDM Hub Environment Report, 133
- Configuring a Proxy User for IBM DB2, 133
- · Re-register Operational Reference Stores with the Proxy User, 134
- · Upgrading the SiperianClient Library Classes for the EJB Protocol, 136
- Disable the MDM Hub Database Debug Log, 137
- Prepare the MDM Hub Metadata, 137
- Upgrade Tests, 137
- Data Director and Hub Server Properties, 139
- Data Director Global Properties, 140

# Post-Upgrade Tasks

Whether you perform a clean upgrade or an in-place upgrade, perform the post-upgrade tasks to ensure your environment is properly configured.

# **Update Properties**

| Upgrade Task  | Details  |
|---|--|
| Update the<br>Application Server<br>Settings in the<br>Properties Files | If you upgrade the application server, you must manually update the application server settings in the properties files.   |
|   | <pre>In the build.properties file located in <mdm directory="" hub="" installation="">\hub \server\bin, update the following settings: - SIP.AS.HOME - SIP.AS.SERVER_FOLDER - SIP.AS.DEPLOY FOLDER</mdm></pre>                       |
|   | <pre>In the setSiperianEnv.bat file located in <mdm directory="" hub="" installation="">\hub \server, update the following settings: - SET JBS_HOME - SET JBS_SERVER_DIR - SET JBS_DEPLOY_DIR - SET JBS_CLIENT_CLASSPATH</mdm></pre> |
|   | <pre>In the cmxserver.properties file located in <mdm directory="" hub="" installation="">     \hub\server\resources, update the following settings:     cmx.appserver.version</mdm></pre>   |
|   | If you have changed any other application server configuration settings, such as port numbers, you must also update the settings in <code>cmxserver.properties</code> .  |

# JBoss Post-Upgrade Tasks

In JBoss environments, perform the following tasks:

| Task  | Action  |
|---|---|
| Remove the odjbc6.jar file                          | Remove the JAR file from the following locations: <pre></pre> <pre></pre> <pre></pre> <pre><pre><pre><pre><pre><pre><pre><pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre>  |
|   | <pre></pre> <pre>&lt;</pre> |
| Optionally, update the JDBC driver to sqljdbc42.jar | <ol> <li>Install the JDBC driver as a core module. For instructions, see the JBoss documentation.</li> <li>Update the datasource definitions in the JBoss standalone-full.xml file to use the module.</li> </ol>  |

## Restart the MDM Hub Environment

Restart the MDM Hub environment after you upgrade.

## Restarting the Application Servers

Restart the application servers and then launch the Hub Console.

- 1. Shut down the application servers that run the Hub Server and the Process Servers.
- 2. Start the application servers that run the Hub Server and the Process Servers.

# Perform Post-Upgrade Tasks for In-place Upgrade

| Upgrade Task                           | Details  |
|--|--|
| Clear the Java cache                   | <ol> <li>Clear the Java WebStart cache. For instructions, see the Java documentation.</li> <li>Clear the Java cache. For instructions, see the Java documentation.</li> <li>Launch the Hub Console.</li> </ol> |
| Delete the ZooKeeper<br>data directory | If you use search, delete the ZooKeeper data directory. You set the ZooKeeper data directory when you configure a Process Server as a ZooKeeper Server.  |

## Validate the Data

Validate the data to ensure there are no metadata issues. Use the data validation tool to identify and resolve content metadata issues.

The data validation tool generates a report in a CSV file and a log in a DVT.log file. The CSV file and log file are saved in the location that is specified by the Operations Reference Store

c repos db release.debug file path parameter.

## About the Data Validation Tool Report

The data validation tool report identifies the data issues that you must resolve after you upgrade the schema to the new database structure. Run the script to perform a data check and create the DVT\_REPORT<report ID>.CSV file.

The report ID consists of the date and time the report was created in the format DVT\_REPORT<YYMMDDHHMMSS>. The report ID follows a 24-hour clock format. For example, a DVT report with a file name of DVT\_REPORT130723163551.CSV was created on July 23, 2013 at 4:35 p.m.

The data validation tool report contains the following sections of data:

- Detailed Temporary Data Tables
- Summary
- Detailed Report by Table

### **Detailed Temporary Data Tables**

The detailed temporary data tables contain a copy of the records with data issues. The data validation tool uses these tables to track and resolve content metadata issues.

#### **Summary**

Lists all issues found during the data check.

The following table describes the information in the summary:

| Column         | Description   |
|----------------|---|
| Ref. #         | The row number.   |
| Check Code     | A code that identifies a specific data issue.   |
| Description    | Provides a brief description of the issue that causes the error for that particular check code.   |
| Fix Type       | <ul> <li>Auto: Data issues that can be fixed automatically by the data validation tool.</li> <li>Info: Data issues that you might not need to fix.</li> </ul> |
| Original Count | Displays the number of data issues that the initial data check found.   |
| Current Count  | Displays the number of data issues that the most recent data check found.   |

#### **Detailed Report by Table**

The following table describes the information provided in the columns of the detailed report by table:

| Column                    | Description   |
|---------------------------|---|
| Ref. #                    | The row number.   |
| Check Code                | A code that identifies a specific data issue.   |
| Description               | Provides a brief description of the issue that causes the error for that particular check code.   |
| <b>Fix Type</b>           | Auto: Data issues that can be fixed automatically by the data validation tool.     Info: Data issues that you might not need to fix.  |
| Foreign Key Name          | The name of the foreign key in the schema that has data issues.   |
| Original Count            | Displays the number of data issues that the initial data check found.   |
| Current Count             | Displays the number of data issues that the most recent data check found.   |
| <base name="" object=""/> | Displays the number of data issues for a particular base object for each foreign key with issues.<br>Each base object with a data issue has a column in the details of the auto mandatory fix issues. |

Two rows that identify the base object table record count and the cross-reference (XREF) table record count appear in the report below the details of the auto mandatory fix issue. These rows display the total number of base object and XREF tables in the schema to provide some perspective on the percentage of records that have data issues.

## Unzip the Data Validation Tool Scripts

Before you can run the data validation tool script, you must unzip the files. Contact Informatica Global Customer Support to get the zip file.

Unzip the file to an empty directory.

The file contains the following files:

- dvt\_body.plb
- dvt\_pack.plb
- dvt\_start.sql

Do not run the dvt\_body.plb or dvt\_pack.plb scripts that are contained in the zip file. These files are used by the dvt\_start.sql script.

### Run the Data Validation Tool to Generate the Initial Results

To generate the initial data validation results, run the dvt\_start.sql script.

- Start SQL\*Plus and connect to the Operational Reference Store for which you want to generate data validation tool results.
- 2. In SQL\*Plus, run the dvt\_start.sql script.

The first of four options appears.

- 3. Select the appropriate option to get the initial data validation results:
  - a. Enter y for the first option, Check data and generate DVT report (y/n) [n].
  - $\textbf{b.} \quad \textbf{Enter $\textbf{n}$ for the second option, $\texttt{Fix}$ data using generated DVT report($y/n) [n]$.}$
  - c. Enter **n** for the third option, Regenerate DVT report (y/n) [n].
  - d. Enter n for the fourth option, Drop temporary DVT tables in schema (y/n) [n].
- 4. Open the data validation tool report in a program that can open CSV files, such as Excel, to review the data issues identified for your schema.

## **Fixing Data Issues**

To fix the issues identified by a validation tool that have a fix type of 'Auto', run the dvt\_start.sql script.

You must have checked the data and generated a report.

- 1. Connect to the ORS schema for which you want to fix data issues.
- 2. In SQL\*Plus, run the dvt\_start.sql script.

The first of four options appears.

- 3. Select the appropriate option to fix data issues:
  - a. Enter n for the first option, Check data and generate DVT report (y/n) [n].
  - b. Enter y for the second option, Fix data using generated DVT report (y/n) [n].
  - c. Enter n for the third option, Regenerate DVT report (y/n) [n].
  - d. Enter n for the fourth option, Drop temporary DVT tables in schema (y/n) [n].

The data issues with a fix type of 'Auto' are resolved.

### Rerun the Data Validation Tool to Confirm Issues are Resolved

When non-zero counts have been addressed, run the data validation tool report again. When you rerun the data validation tool to create another report, the report contains the previous results beside the recent results.

- Start SQL\*Plus and connect to the Operational Reference Store for which you want to generate data validation tool results.
- 2. In SQL\*Plus, run the dvt\_start.sql script.

The first of four options appears.

- 3. Select the appropriate option to get the initial data validation results:
  - a. Enter y for the first option, Check data and generate DVT report (y/n) [n].
  - b. Enter n for the second option, Fix data using generated DVT report (y/n) [n].
  - c. Enter n for the third option, Regenerate DVT report (y/n) [n].
  - d. Enter n for the fourth option, Drop temporary DVT tables in schema (y/n) [n].
- Open the data validation tool report in a program that can open CSV files, such as Excel, to review the data issues identified for your schema.

### Remove the Data Validation Tool

After you have resolved all the issues identified by the data validation tool, remove the data validation tool and any temporary files.

- 1. Start SQL\*Plus.
- 2. In SQL\*Plus, run the the dvt\_start\_detect.sql script.

The first of four options appears.

- 3. Select the appropriate option to remove the data validation tool:
  - a. Enter n for the first option, Check data and generate DVT report (y/n) [n].
  - b. Enter n for the second option, Fix data using generated DVD report (y/n) [n].
  - c. Enter n for the third option, Regenerate DVT report (y/n) [n]
  - d. Enter y for the fourth option, Drop temporary DVT tables in schema (y/n) [n].

# Regenerating the Data Validation Tool Report from the Latest Data Check (Optional)

You can regenerate the data validation tool report CSV file from data created when you last ran a check. You must have performed a data check to regenerate a report. The report appears in the location where you unzipped the data validation tool files.

- 1. Start SQL\*Plus and connect to the Operation Reference Store for which you want to generate data validation tool results.
- 2. In SQL\*Plus, run the dvt\_start.sql script.

The first of four options appears.

- 3. Select the appropriate option to regenerate the data validation tool report:
  - a. Enter n for the first option, Check data and generate DVT report (y/n) [n].
  - b. Enter n for the second option, Fix data using generated DVT report (y/n) [n].

- c. Enter  $\mathbf{y}$  for the third option, Regenerate DVT report (y/n) [n].
- d. Enter  ${\bf n}$  for the fourth option, Drop temporary DVT tables in schema (y/n) [n].
- 4. Open the data validation tool report in a program that can open CSV files, such as Excel, to review the data issues identified for your schema.

# Drop Objects, Columns, and References to Deprecated Objects

| Upgrade Task  | Details  |
|---|--|
| Drop temporary objects created by the readiness check | You can optionally drop the temporary objects that the readiness check creates. Drop the temporary objects to make disk space available.  1. Navigate to following location:  - On Windows. <mdm directory="" hub="" installation="">\server\resource\database \migration_readiness\oracle  - On UNIX. <mdm directory="" hub="" installation="">/server/resource/database/ migration_readiness/oracle  2. In SQL*Plus, run the drop_readiness_temp_objects.sql script.</mdm></mdm>   |
| Unregister and drop<br>deprecated objects             | You can optionally unregister and drop the deprecated HFKM, HMXR, and HUID tables. Unregister and drop the deprecated objects to free up disk space and to avoid Repository Manager validation warnings that indicate that deprecated objects exist in the schema.  1. Resolve any dependencies on the HFKM, HMXR, and HUID tables.  2. Navigate to the following location:  - On Windows. <mdm directory="" hub="" installation="">\server\resource\database \migration_readiness\oracle  - On UNIX. <mdm directory="" hub="" installation="">\server/resource/database/ migration_readiness/oracle  3. In SQL*Plus, run the unregister_and_drop_deprecated_objects.sql script.</mdm></mdm> |
| Drop temporary and unusable migration columns         | The database migration process creates temporary columns and makes some columns unusable. Drop these columns to free up disk space and increase performance.  1. Navigate to the following location:  - On Windows. <mdm directory="" hub="" installation="">\server\resource\database \migration_readiness\oracle  - On UNIX. <mdm directory="" hub="" installation="">/server/resource/database/ migration_readiness/oracle  2. In SQL*Plus, run the drop_unused_columns.sql script.</mdm></mdm>   |
| Drop Rel_Start_Date<br>and Rel_End_Date<br>columns    | The upgrade process deprecates the Rel_Start_Date and the Rel_End_Date columns as system columns. However, the Rel_Start_Date and the Rel_End_Date columns continue to be available as user columns unless you dropped them from the schema. Drop the Rel_Start_Date and the Rel_End_Date columns for Hierarchy Manager relationship base objects to free up disk space, increase performance, and prevent the columns from being available to users.  To drop the Rel_Start_Date and the Rel_End_Date columns, see the instructions for deleting columns in the <i>Multidomain MDM Configuration Guide</i> .  |

| Upgrade Task  | Details   |
|---|---|
| Update references to DIRTY_IND  | Update references to the DIRTY_IND system column. The upgrade process replaces the The DIRTY_IND column with a dirty table that is associated with each base object. The dirty table contains the ROWID_OBJECT value of each base object records that needs to be tokenized.  |
| Update references to<br>REL_START_DATE,<br>REL_END_DATE, and<br>HUID tables | Update references to the REL_START_DATE and REL_END_DATE system columns and to the HUID table. The upgrade process removes references to the REL_START_DATE and REL_END_DATE columns in the packages and views used in a Hierarchy Manager base object. Change references from REL_START_DATE to PERIOD_START_DATE. Change references from REL_END_DATE to PERIOD_END_DATE. |

# Run the PostInstall Script for Deploying the Hub Server (Conditional)

If you skipped the postInstallSetup script during the installation, run the script. The post-installation process deploys the Hub Server applications, creates data sources, and configures JMS message queues.

If you use a WebLogic Server environment with Managed Servers where the Administration Server and the Managed Servers are on different machines, copy all the deployment files to the MDM Hub installation directory of the Administration Server. For more information, see the *Multidomain MDM Installation Guide*.

▶ Open a command prompt and run the postInstallSetup script the following directory: <MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/server

**Note:** If you did not install the ActiveVOS version that is bundled with the MDM Hub installer, do not include the ActiveVOS user names and passwords in the command. On UNIX, if you include the exclamation mark (!) in your password, you must include a backslash before the exclamation mark. For example, if your password is !!cmx!!, enter the following password: \!\!cmx\!\!

#### For WebSphere with security disabled:

- ./postInstallSetup.sh -Ddatabase.password=<MDM Hub Master database password>
- -Davos.username=<ActiveVOS Console username>
- -Davos.password=<ActiveVOS Console password>
- -Davos.jdbc.database.username=<ActiveVOS database username>
- -Davos.jdbc.database.password=<ActiveVOS database password>

#### For WebSphere with security-enabled:

- ./postInstallSetup.sh -Dwebsphere.password=<WebSphere password>
- -Ddatabase.password=<MDM Hub Master database password>
- -Davos.username=<ActiveVOS Console username>
- -Davos.password=<ActiveVOS Console password>
- -Davos.jdbc.database.username=<ActiveVOS database username>
- -Davos.jdbc.database.password=<ActiveVOS database password>

#### For JBoss:

- ./postInstallSetup.sh -Ddatabase.password=<MDM Hub Master database password>
- -Davos.username=<ActiveVOS Console username>
- -Davos.password=<ActiveVOS Console password>
- -Davos.jdbc.database.username=<ActiveVOS database username>
- -Davos.jdbc.database.password=<ActiveVOS database password>

#### For WebLogic:

```
./postInstallSetup.sh -Dweblogic.password=<WebLogic password>
-Ddatabase.password=<MDM Hub Master database password>
-Davos.username=<ActiveVOS Console username>
-Davos.password=<ActiveVOS Console password>
-Davos.jdbc.database.username=<ActiveVOS database username>
```

-Davos.jdbc.database.password=<ActiveVOS database password>

**Important:** In a WebLogic 12.2.1.3 or later environment, if you decided to install ActiveVOS or if you decided to use the WebLogic T3S protocol, add the options that match your decisions:

- ActiveVOS installed. -Dinstall.avos.patch=true
- T3S protocol used. -Dweblogic.naming.protocol=t3s

The ActiveVOS Console credentials are the same credentials as the administrative user in the application server.

The ActiveVOS database credentials are the same credentials that were used to run the <code>create\_bpm</code> script.

If you deploy in a WebLogic environment with Managed Servers, ensure that you specify all the Managed Servers as the targets for deployments in the WebLogic Server Administration Console.

For more information, see the Multidomain MDM Installation Guide and the WebLogic documentation.

## Configure WebSphere Administrative Security

You can configure WebSphere administrative security to control MDM Hub access to the WebSphere administrative console.

To configure WebSphere administrative security, perform the following steps:

- Unregister the Operational Reference Stores (ORS).
- 2. Uninstall the EAR files and remove data sources from WebSphere.
- 3. Enable WebSphere administrative security in the WebSphere administrative console.
- 4. Configure the Hub Server and Process Server properties.
- 5. Run the Hub Server and Process Server PostInstallSetup scripts.
- 6. Register the ORS.

Enter your WebSphere credentials when you register the ORS. You do not need to enter your credentials after you verify the ORS.

## Unregister the Operational Reference Store

To unregister the Operational Reference Store (ORS), use the Databases tool in the MDM Hub Console.

- 1. From the MDM Hub Console, click Write Lock > Acquire Lock.
- 2. From the Configuration workbench, select the Databases tool.

The **Database Information** page appears.

- 3. From the list of databases, select the ORS to unregister.
- 4. Click Unregister database.

The Database tool prompts you to confirm that you want to unregister the ORS.

5. Click Yes.

### Uninstall the EAR files and Remove Data Sources

To uninstall the EAR files and remove data sources, use the WebSphere administrative console.

Use the WebSphere administrative console to undeploy the following deployment files:

| Deployment File Name             | Description                                     |
|----------------------------------|---|
| siperian-mrm.ear                 | Required. The Hub Server application.           |
| provisioning-ear.ear             | Required. The Provisioning tool application.    |
| entity360view-ear.ear            | Optional. The Entity 360 framework.             |
| informatica-mdm-platform-ear.ear | Optional. The Informatica platform application. |

- 2. Use the WebSphere administrative console to remove all data sources for the MDM Hub Master Database and the Operational Reference Stores.
- 3. Restart the application server.

For more information, see the WebSphere documentation.

## Enable WebSphere Administrative Security in the WebSphere Administrative Console

You must enable WebSphere administrative security in the WebSphere administrative console. When you enable WebSphere administrative security, disable WebSphere application security.

For more information, see the WebSphere documentation.

## Configure the Hub Server and Process Server Properties

You must configure the Hub Server and Process Server property files to enable WebSphere administrative security.

- 1. Stop the application server.
- Enable WebSphere security on the Hub Server.
  - a. Open cmxserver.properties in the following directory:
    - On UNIX. <MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/server/resources
    - On Windows. <MDM Hub installation directory>\hub\server\resources
  - b. Set cmx.websphere.security.enabled to true.
- 3. Enable WebSphere security on the Process Server.
  - a. Open cmxcleanse.properties in the following directory:
    - On UNIX. <MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/cleanse/resources
    - On Windows. <MDM Hub installation directory>\hub\cleanse\resources
  - b. Set cmx.websphere.security.enabled to true.

- 4. Configure the WebSphere user name on the Hub Server.
  - a. Open build.properties in the following directory:

```
On UNIX. <MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/server/bin
```

- On Windows. <MDM Hub installation directory>\hub\server\bin
- b. Set websphere.username to the WebSphere administrative user name.
- 5. Configure the WebSphere user name on the Process Server.
  - a. Open build.properties in the following directory:

```
On UNIX. <MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/cleanse/bin
```

- On Windows. <MDM Hub installation directory>\hub\cleanse\bin
- b. Set websphere.username to the WebSphere administrative user name.
- 6. In SQL\* Plus, run the following command to set c repos cleanse match server.is secured to 1.

```
UPDATE c_repos_cleanse_match_server set is_secured = 1 where
rowid_cleanse_match_server='<Insert value here>';
COMMIT;
```

7. Start the application server.

## Run the Hub Server PostInstallSetup Script Manually

You must run the Hub Server PostInstallSetup script.

- 1. Open a command prompt.
- 2. Navigate to the PostInstallSetup script in the following directory:

```
On UNIX. <MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/server
```

On Windows. <MDM Hub installation directory>\hub\server

3. Run the following command:

On UNIX. postinstallsetup.sh -Ddatabase.password=<MDM Hub Master Database> -

Dwebsphere.password=<WebSphere administrative user password>

On Windows. postinstallsetup.bat -Ddatabase.password=<MDM Hub Master Database> - Dwebsphere.password=<WebSphere administrative user password>

4. Restart the application server.

## Run the Process Server PostInstallSetup Script

You must run the Process Server PostInstallSetup script.

- 1. Open a command prompt.
- 2. Navigate to the PostInstallSetup script in the following directory:

On UNIX. <MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/cleanse

On Windows. <MDM Hub installation directory>\hub\cleanse

3. Run the following command:

 $\textbf{On UNIX}. \ \texttt{postinstallsetup.sh -Dwebsphere.password=<websphere \ administrative \ user \ password>}$ 

 $\textbf{On Windows}. \ \texttt{postinstallsetup.bat -Dwebsphere.password=<} \texttt{websphere administrative user password>}$ 

4. Restart the application server.

## Register the Operational Reference Stores

To register the Operational Reference Stores, use the Hub Console.

- 1. Start the **Databases** tool under the **Configuration** workbench.
- Click Write Lock > Acquire Lock.
- 3. Click Register database.

The Informatica MDM Hub Connection Wizard appears and prompts you to select the database type.

- 4. Select Microsoft SQL Server, Oracle, or IBM DB2, and click Next.
- 5. In Microsoft SQL Server, configure connection properties for the database.
  - a. In the Connection Properties page, specify the connection properties, and then click Next.
     The following table lists and describes the connection properties:

| Property                     | Description   |
|------------------------------|---|
| Database Display<br>Name     | Name for the Operational Reference Store that must appear in the Hub Console.   |
| Machine Identifier           | Prefix given to keys to uniquely identify records from the Hub Store instance.  |
| Database hostname            | IP address or name of the server that hosts the Microsoft SQL Server database.  |
| Port                         | Port of the Microsoft SQL Server database. The default is 1433.   |
| Schema Name                  | Name of the Operational Reference Store.  |
| Password                     | Password associated with the user name for the Operational Reference Store.   |
| Dynamic Data Masking<br>host | IP address or name of the server that hosts Dynamic Data Masking. Leave empty if you do not use Dynamic Data Masking. |
| DDM connection URL           | Optional. URL for the Dynamic Data Masking server. Leave empty if you do not use Dynamic Data Masking.                |

- b. In the Connection Properties page, specify the connection properties, and then click **Next**.
- c. Review the summary, and specify additional connection properties.

The following table lists additional connection properties that you can configure:

| Property                             | Description   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Connection URL                       | Connect URL. The Connection Wizard generates the connect URL by default.      |
| Create datasource after registration | Select to create the datasource on the application server after registration. |

- 6. In Oracle environments, configure connection properties for the database.
  - a. Select an Oracle connection method, and click Next.

The following table describes the Oracle connection methods that you can select:

| Connection Method | Description                                      |
|-------------------|--|
| Service           | Connect to Oracle by using the service name.     |
| SID               | Connect to Oracle by using the Oracle System ID. |

For more information about SERVICE and SID names, see the Oracle documentation.

The Connection Properties page appears.

b. Specify the connection properties for the connection type that you select, and click **Next**.

The following table lists and describes the connection properties:

| Property                 | Description  |
|--------------------------|--|
| Database<br>Display Name | Name for the Operational Reference Store that must appear in the Hub Console.  |
| Machine<br>Identifier    | Prefix given to keys to uniquely identify records from the Hub Store instance.   |
| Database<br>hostname     | IP address or name of the server that hosts the Oracle database.   |
| SID                      | Oracle System Identifier that refers to the instance of the Oracle database running on the server. The <b>SID</b> field appears if you selected the <b>SID</b> connection type.  |
| Service                  | Name of the Oracle SERVICE used to connect to the Oracle database. The <b>Service</b> field appears if the you selected the <b>Service</b> connection type.  |
| Port                     | The TCP port of the Oracle listener running on the Oracle database server. The default is 1521.  |
| Oracle<br>TNS Name       | Name by which the database is known on your network as defined in the ${\tt TNSNAMES.ORA}$ file of the application server.   |
|                          | For example: mydatabase.mycompany.com.   |
|                          | You set the Oracle TNS name when you install the Oracle database. For more information about the Oracle TNS name, see the Oracle documentation.  |
| Schema Name              | Name of the Operational Reference Store.   |
| User name                | User name for the Operational Reference Store. By default, this is the user name that you specify in the script that you use to create the Operational Reference Store. This user owns all of the Operational Reference Store database objects in the Hub Store. |
|                          | If a proxy user is configured for the Operational Reference Store, then you can specify the proxy user instead.  |

| Property                     | Description  |
|------------------------------|--|
| Password                     | Password associated with the user name for the Operational Reference Store. For Oracle, the password is not case sensitive.  |
|                              | By default, this is the password that you specify when you create the Operational Reference Store.                           |
|                              | If a proxy user is configured for the Operational Reference Store, then you specify the password for the proxy user instead. |
| Dynamic Data<br>Masking host | IP address or name of the server that hosts Dynamic Data Masking. Leave empty if you do not use Dynamic Data Masking.        |
| DDM<br>connection<br>URL     | Optional. URL for the Dynamic Data Masking server. Leave empty if you do not use Dynamic Data Masking.                       |

**Note:** The **Schema Name** and the **User Name** are both the names of the Operational Reference Store that you specified when you created the Operational Reference Store. If you need this information, consult your database administrator.

The **Summary** page appears.

c. Review the summary, and specify additional connection properties.

The following table lists additional connection properties that you can configure:

| Property                             | Description   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Connection URL                       | Connect URL. The Connection Wizard generates the connect URL by default. The following list shows the format of the connect URL for the Oracle connection types:  Service connection type |
|                                      | <pre>jdbc:oracle:thin:@//database_host:port/service_name</pre>  |
|                                      | SID connection type   |
|                                      | jdbc:oracle:thin:@//database_host:port:sid  |
|                                      | For a service connection type only, you have the option to customize and later test a different connection URL.   |
| Create datasource after registration | Select to create the datasource on the application server after registration.   |
|                                      | <b>Note:</b> If you do not select the option, you must manually configure the data source.  |

- d. For a service connection type, if you want to change the default URL, click the **Edit** button, specify the URL, and then click **OK**.
- 7. In IBM DB2 environments, configure connection properties for the database.
  - a. Specify the connection properties, and click Next.

The following table lists and describes the connection properties:

| Property                     | Description   |
|------------------------------|---|
| Database Display<br>Name     | Name for the Operational Reference Store that must appear in the Hub Console.   |
| Machine Identifier           | Prefix given to keys to uniquely identify records from the Hub Store instance.  |
| Database server<br>name      | IP address or name of the server that hosts the IBM DB2 database.   |
| Database name                | Name of the database that you create.   |
| Database<br>hostname         | IP address or name of the server that hosts the IBM DB2 database.   |
| Schema Name                  | Name of the Operational Reference Store.  |
| User name                    | User name for the Operational Reference Store. By default, this is the user name that you specify in the script that you use to create the Operational Reference Store. This user owns all the Operational Reference Store database objects in the Hub Store. If a proxy user is configured for the Operational Reference Store, then you can specify the proxy user instead. |
| Password                     | Password associated with the user name for the Operational Reference Store.   |
|                              | For IBM DB2, the password is case sensitive.  By default, this is the password that you specify when you create the Operational Reference Store.  |
|                              | If a proxy user is configured for the Operational Reference Store, then you specify the password for the proxy user instead.  |
| Dynamic Data<br>Masking host | IP address or name of the server that hosts Dynamic Data Masking. Leave empty if you do not use Dynamic Data Masking.   |
| DDM connection<br>URL        | Optional. URL for the Dynamic Data Masking server. Leave empty if you do not use Dynamic Data Masking.  |

**Note:** The **Schema Name** and the **User Name** are both the names of the Operational Reference Store that you specified when you created the Operational Reference Store. If you need this information, consult your database administrator.

The **Summary** page appears.

b. Review the summary, and specify additional connection properties.

The following table lists additional connection properties that you can configure:

| Property                             | Description   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Connection URL                       | Connect URL. The Connection Wizard generates the connect URL by default. The following example shows the format of the connect URL: jdbc:db2://database_host:port/db_name |
| Create datasource after registration | Select to create the datasource on the application server after registration.  Note: If you do not select the option, you must manually configure the data source.        |

8. Click Finish.

The **Registering Database** dialog box appears.

9. Click OK.

The Application Server Login dialog box appears.

- 10. Enter the WebSphere administrative user name and password.
- 11. Click **OK**.

The MDM Hub registers the ORS.

- 12. Restart the application server.
- 13. Select the Operational Reference Store that you registered, and click the **Test database connection** button to test the database settings.

The Test Database dialog box displays the result of the database connection test.

14. Click OK

The ORS is registered, and the connection to the database is tested.

# Configure Cleanse Functions for Platform Transformations

If you want to use the platform transformations that you configured, add an IDQ library in the Cleanse Functions tool. You can then use the cleanse functions in the library in place of the platform transformations.

- 1. Launch the Hub Console and start the Cleanse Functions tool.
- 2. Acquire a write lock.
- 3. Right-click Cleanse Functions, and then click Add IDQ Library.

The Add IDQ Library dialog box appears.

#### 4. Specify the following properties:

| Property         | Description   |
|------------------|---|
| Library Name     | Name of the IDQ library. The name appears as the folder name in the Cleanse Functions list. |
| IDQ WSDL URI     | URI of the WSDL associated with the platform transformation.                                |
| IDQ WSDL Service | Service of the WSDL associated with the platform transformation.                            |
| IDQ WSDL Port    | Port of the WSDL associated with the platform transformation.                               |
| Description      | Descriptive text for the library that you want displayed in the Cleanse Functions tool.     |

#### 5. Click OK.

The IDQ library appears in the Cleanse Functions navigator.

Click Refresh to generate the IDQ library.

The Cleanse Functions tool retrieves the WSDL associated with the platform transformation, generates the IDQ library, and displays the available cleanse functions in the Cleanse Functions list.

7. Test the cleanse functions.

You can now use the cleanse functions in place of the platform transformations. The cleanse functions in the IDQ library can call the web services associated with the platform transformations.

## Validate the Upgraded Metadata

Ensure the Operational Reference Stores (ORS) do not have any validation errors. Compare the results with the previous validation results that you obtained in before the upgrade. Use the Repository Manager in the Hub Console to validate metadata.

**Note:** After you upgrade from a previous version of the MDM Hub, you might have validation errors for old databases that had staging tables without any mappings. In the Repository Manager tool in the Hub Console, click the **Repair** button to fix these repairable issues.

## Validating Metadata

To validate the metadata of an Operational Reference Store (ORS) repository, use the Repository Manager tool in the Hub Console.

- 1. From the Configuration workbench in the Hub Console, select the Repository Manager tool.
- 2. From the Repository Manager tool, select the Validate tab.
- 3. From the **Select the repository to validate** list, select a repository.
- 4. Click the Validate button.
- From the Select Validation Checks dialog box, select the validation checks to perform. Click OK.
   The Repository Manager tool validates the repository and displays any issues in the Issues Found pane.

- 6. Click the **Repair** button to fix repairable issues.
- If the ORS remains in the **Unknown** state, synchronize the system clocks of the application server and the database machine.

## Saving the Validation Results

After you run the validation process, you can save the validation results as an HTML file.

- 1. From the Repository Manager tool in the Hub Console, select the Validate tab.
- Click the Save button.
- 3. From the Save dialog box, navigate to the directory where you want to save the validation results.
- 4. Specify a descriptive file name for the HTML file. Click Save.

The Repository Manager saves the validation results as an HTML file in the specified location.

## Resolving Metadata Validation Messages

After you run the validation tool, you might receive validation messages.

The following error messages are some of the most common validation messages.

Warning SIP-PV-10703 Package 'EMPLOYEE\_DETAILS\_PKG' is not synchronized with its database view.

To synchronize with the database view, run the Repair process from the Repository Manager.

View 'C\_EMPLOYEE\_DETAILS\_MTIP' - SELECT privilege for proxy user role is not granted. Of SIP-MV-11410- SQL of the root MTIP is incorrect.

#### Rebuild the MTIP views.

- 1. In the Hub Console, open the Configuration workbench and click Enterprise Manager.
- 2. Acquire a write lock.
- 3. Select the ORS databases tab.
- 4. Select the database.
- 5. Select the Properties tab.
- 6. Find the property called MTIP regeneration required, and click the Regenerate MTIPs button.

View 'EMPLOYEE\_DETAILS\_PKG' - SELECT privilege for proxy user role is not granted.

Update the proxy user role to include this privilege.

- 1. In the Hub Console, open the Security Access Manager workbench and click Roles.
- 2. Acquire a write lock.
- 3. Select the proxy user role.
- 4. Select the Resource Privileges tab.
- 5. Find the package or table that was named in the message.
- 6. Select the Read check box.

```
SIP-PV-11105 - SELECT privilege for proxy user role has not been granted for a view. View 'C REPOS USER GROUP ALL' - SELECT privilege for proxy user role is not granted.
```

The database migration script created the proxy user role but did not grant privileges to the proxy user on the repository views. From the database, grant the proxy user SELECT privileges on the repository views.

# Review the MDM Hub Environment Report

Use the Enterprise Manager tool in the Hub Console to review the current MDM Hub configuration for Hub Servers, Process Servers, the MDM Hub Master Database, and Operational Reference Store databases. Note the version history of the components.

Save a copy of the environment report in the upgradedoc upgrade documentation folder.

## Saving the MDM Hub Environment Report

To save the MDM Hub environment report, use the Enterprise Manager tool in the Hub Console.

- 1. From the Configuration workbench in the Hub Console, select the Enterprise Manager tool.
- 2. From the Enterprise Manager tool, select the Environment Report tab.
- 3. Click Save.
- 4. From the **Save Hub Environment Report** dialog box, navigate to the directory where you want to save the environment report.
- 5. Click Save.

# Configuring a Proxy User for IBM DB2

If the Operational Reference Store user name is different from the Operational Reference Store schema name, you must configure a proxy user. Also, if any Operational Reference Store was previously registered to a proxy user, you must configure a proxy user. The proxy user can retrieve metadata, change user data, and run batch jobs. The proxy user cannot make changes to metadata.

To configure the Operational Reference Store user as a proxy user, assign the proxy role to the user. The proxy role is predefined in the MDM Hub and has the Read and Execute privilege.

Note: The proxy user must have only the proxy role. You cannot change the privileges for the proxy role.

- Add an Operational Reference Store user that you want to use as a proxy user.
  - a. Start the **Users** tool in the Hub Console.
  - b. Acquire a write lock.
  - c. Click the **User** tab.
  - d. Click Add user.

The Add User dialog box appears.

#### e. Specify the following settings for the user:

| Property                     | Description  |
|------------------------------|--|
| First name                   | First name of the user.  |
| Middle name                  | Middle name of the user.   |
| Last name                    | Last name of the user.   |
| User name                    | Name of the user account that the user enters to log in to the Hub Console.  |
| Default database             | Default database for the user. This is the Operational Reference Store that users select when they log in to the Hub Console.  |
| Password                     | Password for the user.   |
| Verify password              | Type the password again for verification.  |
| Use external authentication? | Enable this option to use external authentication through a third-party security provider instead of the default authentication that the MDM Hub provides.  Disable this option to use the default MDM Hub authentication. |

#### f. Click OK.

The MDM Hub adds the user to the list of users on the User tab.

- 2. Assign the proxy role to the user.
  - a. Start the Users and Groups tool.
  - b. Acquire a write lock.
  - c. Click the Assign Users/Groups To Role tab.
  - d. Select Proxy Role.
  - e. Click Assign Users To Role.

The **Assign Users to Role** dialog box appears.

- f. Select the user that you added in step 1.
  - Ensure that you clear any other user that is selected.
- g. Click OK.

# Re-register Operational Reference Stores with the Proxy User

If any Operational Reference Store was previously registered to the proxy user, and if you changed the registered proxy user to the original schema owner before the upgrade, change the database registration back to the proxy user.

1. Start the Hub Console.

The **Change database** dialog box appears.

- 2. Select the MDM Hub Master database, and click Connect.
- 3. Start the **Databases** tool under the Configuration workbench.
- 4. Click Write Lock > Acquire Lock.
- 5. Click the **Register database** button.

The Informatica MDM Hub Connection Wizard appears and prompts you to select the database type.

- 6. Select the type of database, and click Next.
- 7. Configure connection properties for the database.
  - a. Select an Oracle connection method, and click Next.

The following table describes the Oracle connection methods that you can select:

| Connection Method | Description                                      |
|-------------------|--|
| Service           | Connect to Oracle by using the service name.     |
| SID               | Connect to Oracle by using the Oracle System ID. |

For more information about SERVICE and SID names, see the Oracle documentation.

The Connection Properties page appears.

b. Specify the connection properties for the connection type that you select, and click Next.

The following table lists and describes the connection properties:

| Property                 | Description   |
|--------------------------|---|
| Database<br>Display Name | Name for the Operational Reference Store that must appear in the Hub Console.   |
| Machine<br>Identifier    | Prefix given to keys to uniquely identify records from the Hub Store instance.  |
| Database<br>hostname     | IP address or name of the server that hosts the Oracle database.  |
| SID                      | Oracle System Identifier that refers to the instance of the Oracle database running on the server. The <b>SID</b> field appears if you selected the <b>SID</b> connection type. |
| Service                  | Name of the Oracle SERVICE used to connect to the Oracle database. The <b>Service</b> field appears if the you selected the <b>Service</b> connection type.                     |
| Port                     | The TCP port of the Oracle listener running on the Oracle database server. The default is 1521.   |
| Oracle<br>TNS Name       | Name by which the database is known on your network as defined in the TNSNAMES.ORA file of the application server.  For example: mydatabase.mycompany.com.                      |
|                          | You set the Oracle TNS name when you install the Oracle database. For more information about the Oracle TNS name, see the Oracle documentation.                                 |

| Property    | Description  |
|-------------|--|
| Schema Name | Name of the Operational Reference Store.                                     |
| User name   | Specify the proxy user name for the Operational Reference Store.             |
| Password    | Password associated with the proxy user for the Operational Reference Store. |

The **Summary** page appears.

c. Review the summary, and specify additional connection properties.

The following table lists additional connection properties that you can configure:

| Property                             | Description   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| Connection URL                       | Connect URL. The Connection Wizard generates the connect URL by default. The following list shows the format of the connect URL for the Oracle connection types:  Service connection type |
|                                      | jdbc:oracle:thin:@//database_host:port/service_name   |
|                                      | SID connection type   |
|                                      | jdbc:oracle:thin:@//database_host:port:sid  |
|                                      | For a service connection type only, you have the option to customize and later test a different connection URL.   |
| Create datasource after registration | Select to create the datasource on the application server after registration.  Note: If you do not select the option, you must manually configure the data source.                        |

- d. For a service connection type, if you want to change the default URL, click the **Edit** button, specify the URL, and then click **OK**.
- 8. Click Finish.

The **Registering Database** dialog box appears.

9. Click OK.

The MDM Hub registers the Operational Reference Store.

# Upgrading the SiperianClient Library Classes for the EJB Protocol

If you use the EJB protocol to communicate with the MDM Hub through the Services Integration Framework (SIF) requests, you must use the latest version of the SiperianClient library classes. If you use custom JNDI lookup methods, update the lookup methods so that the methods conform to the EJB3 conventions.

1. Replace the existing SiperianClient library classes with the latest version of the SiperianClient library classes.

The siperian-api.jar file located in the following directories contains the SiperianClient library classes:

- <Resource Kit Installation Directory>\sdk\sifsdk\lib
- <MDM Hub Installation Directory>\hub\server\lib
- If you use custom JNDI lookup methods, update the lookup methods so that the methods conform to the EJB3 conventions.

# Disable the MDM Hub Database Debug Log

Disable the MDM Hub database debug logs. The MDM Hub does not use database debug logs. Use the application server logs for debugging.

# Prepare the MDM Hub Metadata

| Upgrade Task                                   | Details  |
|--|--|
| Regenerate<br>match tokens.                    | Run the Generate Match Tokens batch job for each base object. The Generate Match Tokens batch job creates the match tokens based on the SSA-Name3 library files that you update during the Process Server upgrade.   |
| Reindex the search data.                       | If the search data contains any accented characters, such as â and î, you can run the Initially Index Smart Search Data batch job to reindex the data. After you reindex the data, a search request can return records that contain accented characters.   |
| Configure<br>metadata<br>caching<br>(Optional) | In version 10.1 and earlier, the MDM Hub used JBoss Cache for metadata caching. After you upgrade from one of these versions, the MDM Hub Server uses the Infinispan configuration file instead of the JBoss Cache configuration file. You might need to configure Infinispan caching to achieve similar results as JBoss Cache.  For more information, see "Configuring Metadata Caching (Optional)" on page 180. |
| Reregister custom indexes.                     | You must reregister custom indexes after the migration. Use the registerCustomIndex SIF API to reregister the custom indexes.  |
|  | For more information about the RegisterCustomIndex SIF API, see theMultidomain MDM Services Integration Framework Guide.   |
|  | For SOAP and Java code samples to run the registerCustomIndex SIF API, see KB 500116.https://kb.informatica.com/howto/6/Pages/19/500116.aspx?myk=500116.   |

# **Upgrade Tests**

Test the upgraded MDM Hub. Each Multidomain MDM implementation is unique and the testing requirements vary between the development, test, and production environments. If a suggested upgrade test is not appropriate for your environment, you can design your own tests. Design the test activities to meet the unique requirements of your implementation.

## MDM Hub Upgrade Tests

Perform the following Hub Console upgrade tests that apply to your environment:

- 1. Launch the Hub Console.
- 2. Select the **Users** tool in the **Configuration** workbench to view the properties of an existing user.
- Select the Schema Viewer tool in the Model workbench, and then connect to an Operational Reference Store. Review the schema in the Schema Viewer.
- 4. Select the Schema tool in the Model workbench to view the Match/Merge Setup for a base object.
- 5. Select the **Batch Viewer** tool in the **Utilities** workbench. If possible, run test batch jobs for the Stage batch job, the Load batch job, the Match batch job, and the Merge batch job.
- Select the Process Server tool in the **Utilities** workbench. Test the connection to a registered Process Server.
- 7. Select the **Cleanse Functions** tool in the **Model** workbench. Run a test cleanse function for each external cleanse engine.
- 8. Select the Data Manager tool in the Data Steward workbench. Create two matching test records.
- 9. Select the **Merge Manager** tool in the **Data Steward** workbench. Find the two test records, merge the test records, and then unmerge the test records.

## **Custom Code Upgrade Tests**

If you have custom code such as custom client applications, run tests to verify that the custom code works as expected.

## **Provisioning Tool Upgrade Test**

Log in to the Provisioning tool. The tool validates the XML files that contain your configuration for business entities, reference entities, applications, custom views, tasks, and so on.

If the validation process is successful, continue to the next upgrade test. Optionally, you can spot check your configuration to verify the settings.

If the validation process detects some errors, review the list of errors and proposed fixes. A fix might include removing some settings. You can choose to accept all the fixes or cancel without making changes. If you choose to cancel, you must fix the errors in the XML files yourself. The XML files are stored in the C\_REPOS\_CO\_CS\_CONFIG and C\_REPOS\_COMPONENT\_INSTANCE repository tables.

Caution: If you exit without fixing the errors, you might be locked out of the Provisioning tool.

- 1. Log in to the Provisioning tool.
- 2. Select an Operational Reference Store database.
- 3. If you see validation errors, review the proposed fixes.
  - To apply the fixes, click Fix.
  - To exit without applying the fixes, click Cancel.
     You are logged out of the Provisioning tool. Open the XML files and fix the errors.
- 4. Optionally, after the XML is valid, you can verify the configuration settings.

## Data Director with Business Entities Upgrade Tests

If you use Data Director with business entities, open the application and test it.

Perform the following upgrade tests that apply to your environment:

- 1. Log in to Data Director.
- 2. Run multiple searches.
- 3. Create and process multiple tasks.
- 4. Insert a test record.
- 5. Copy the test record to create a second test record.
- 6. Run a search to find the two test records.
- 7. Merge and unmerge the two test records.

## Data Director with Subject Areas Upgrade Tests

If you use Data Director with subject areas, you need to deploy the application before you begin the tests.

Perform the following upgrade tests that apply to your environment:

- 1. Launch the Data Director Configuration Manager, and then deploy a Data Director application instance.
- 2. Log in to Data Director.
- 3. Run multiple searches.
- 4. Create and process multiple tasks.
- 5. Insert a test record.
- 6. Copy the test record to create a second test record.
- 7. Run a search to find the two test records.
- 8. Merge and unmerge the two test records.

# Data Director and Hub Server Properties

The upgrade process preserves the values of the Hub Server properties that affect Data Director.

When you upgrade from earlier versions, the pre-upgrade <code>cmxserver.properties</code> file does not contain some properties that were added in version 10.0.0 and later. Verify that the upgrade process added the properties to the <code>cmxserver.properties</code> file. If necessary, add any missing properties to the end of the <code><MDM Hub</code> installation <code>directory>/hub/server/resources/cmxserver.properties</code> file.

The default values for the properties retain the current behavior of Data Director applications. Before you customize the properties, read the property descriptions in the "Hub Server Properties" chapter of the *Multidomain MDM Configuration Guide*.

#### Properties Added in Version 10.3

Added new properties to support file upload, task manager, and workflow diagrams.

```
# File upload properties
# -----
# Maximum upload size.
cmx.file.max_file_size_mb=20
```

```
# Maximum number of concurrent uploads.
cmx.file.max concurrent uploads=20
# Type of files that can be uploaded.
cmx.file.allowed file extensions=pdf,jpg
# Number of minutes until an uploaded file expires.
# To avoid expiration, set to 0.
cmx.server.attachment.temp.ttl minutes=60
# Task Manager property
# Set to true to display the Task Manager tab in applications
# that use subject areas.
cmx.dataview.taskmanager.enabled=true
# Workflow diagram properties
# Set to true to display the workflow diagram associated
# with the tasks in the Task Manager for the users with
# the ActiveVOS abAdmin role.
cmx.e360.BPMProcess.view.enabled=false
cmx.e360.BPMProcess.view.autologout.seconds=30
```

**Note:** If you decide to use Elasticsearch for full-text search in a Data Director application, add the Elasticsearch properties manually. For more information, see <u>"Search Configuration Upgrade Overview" on page 141</u>.

#### Properties Added in Version 10.2 and earlier

Added properties to support the Data tab, search, and the Entity 360 framework. Add the default values and then change them as needed.

# **Data Director Global Properties**

If your Data Director environment included user preferences for shown or hidden columns, the settings are lost when you upgrade because the cryptographic hash algorithm has changed in this version. After you upgrade, clear the C\_REPOS\_DS\_PREF\_DETAIL table and recreate your user preferences.

For instructions about how to update Data Director global properties, including user preferences, see the *Multidomain MDM Data Director Implementation Guide*.

## CHAPTER 10

# Search Configuration Upgrade

This chapter includes the following topics:

- Search Configuration Upgrade Overview, 141
- Step 1. Set Up Elasticsearch, 142
- Step 2. Configure the MDM Hub Properties for Search, 148
- Step 3. Configure Search by Using the Provisioning Tool, 151
- Step 4. Validate the Operational Reference Store, 152
- Step 5. Index the Search Data, 153

# Search Configuration Upgrade Overview

You can use a Data Director application or a custom application to search for data within a specific business entity. Previously, you used configured Solr for search operations, which is now deprecated. Informatica recommends that you configure Elasticsearch for search operations, which is packaged with the MDM Hub installer.

The performance of searches with Elasticsearch is better than the searches with Solr. Also, to use security filters during search, you must configure Elasticsearch for search.

To upgrade the search configuration to use Elasticsearch, perform the following tasks:

- 1. Set up Elasticsearch.
- 2. Configure the MDM Hub properties for search.
- 3. Configure search by using the Provisioning tool.
- 4. Validate the Operational Reference Store (ORS).
- 5. Index the search data.

## Step 1. Set Up Elasticsearch

To configure search, you must set up Elasticsearch.

If you want to set up Elasticsearch in a UNIX environment, before the setup, perform the following tasks to configure the environment:

- To ensure that Elasticsearch does not run out of file descriptors and result in data loss, set the number of file descriptors to 65536 or higher.
- To prevent memory swapping, ensure that you configure the system to prevent swapping. You can configure the Java Virtual Machine (JVM) to lock the heap in memory through mlockall.
   Also, after you install Elasticsearch, set the bootstrap.memory\_lock property to true in the elasticsearch.yml file. This property sets the memory lock and prevents memory swapping.

When you start Elasticsearch, if memory locking issues occur, you might need to set soft memlock unlimited and hard memlock unlimited.

To set up Elasticsearch, perform the following tasks:

- 1. Install Elasticsearch.
- 2. Create keystores, truststore, and certificates.
- 3. Configure the Elasticsearch Java Virtual Machine (JVM).
- 4. Configure the Elasticsearch properties file.
- 5. Secure the Elasticsearch cluster.
- 6. Upload the Search Guard configuration to Elasticsearch.
- 7. Configure the client certificate DN in the Elasticsearch properties file
- 8. Customize the list of words to ignore in searches.
- 9. Customize the list of synonyms to include in searches.
- Start Elasticsearch.

### Install Elasticsearch

After you install the Hub Server and the Process Server, to configure search, install Elasticsearch. To install Elasticsearch, you extract the Elasticsearch archive file.

Ensure that you use a supported operating system and Java version for your Elasticsearch installation. For more information, see the Elasticsearch Support Matrix.

- Navigate to the Elasticsearch ZIP file in the following directory:
   MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/server/thirdparty
- 2. Extract elasticsearch-<version>.zip.

## Create Keystores, Truststore, and Certificates

After you install Elasticsearch, create keystores, truststore, and security certificates that are required to secure the communication between the MDM Hub and Elasticsearch. To create keystores, truststore, and certificates, run the sip\_ant script on only one of the machines that has the Hub Server installed. Then, copy the keystores, truststore, and certificates to all the other machines on which the Hub Server is installed.

Note: You can create keystores, truststore, and certificates without using the sip ant script.

The following table describes the keystores and truststore that are required:

| Keystore/Truststore Name           | Description   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| MDM_ESCLIENT_FILE_JKS.keystore     | Elasticsearch keystore that contains the client certificate and its key.  |
| MDM_ESKEYSTORE_FILE_JKS.keystore   | Elasticsearch keystore that contains the client and node certificates. If the Elasticsearch cluster has multiple nodes, all the nodes use the certificates. |
| MDM_ESTRUSTSTORE_FILE_JKS.keystore | Elasticsearch truststore that contains the signed certificate for the client and Elasticsearch nodes.   |

 Open a command prompt, and navigate to the following directory on one of the machines that has the Hub Server installed:

```
<MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/server/bin
```

2. To create the keystores, truststore, and certificates, run the following command:

```
On UNIX. sip_ant.sh generate_mdm_es_store
On Windows. sip_ant.bat generate_mdm_es_store
```

3. When prompted for a password for the keystores and truststore, specify a password.

The keystores, truststore, and certificates are created in the following directory: <MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/server/resources/certificates

- 4. Copy the following keystores and truststore to the <Elasticsearch installation directory>/config directory of each Elasticsearch installation:
  - MDM\_ESCLIENT\_FILE\_JKS.keystore
  - MDM\_ESKEYSTORE\_FILE\_JKS.keystore
  - MDM\_ESTRUSTSTORE\_FILE\_JKS.keystore
- 5. Copy the following keystore and truststore to the <MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/server/resources/certificates directory of each Hub Server node that is part of the Elasticsearch cluster:
  - MDM\_ESCLIENT\_FILE\_JKS.keystore
  - MDM\_ESTRUSTSTORE\_FILE\_JKS.keystore

## Configure the Elasticsearch Java Virtual Machine (JVM)

Configure the Elasticsearch Java Virtual Machine (JVM) to use a heap size based on the amount of RAM available on your machine. To configure the JVM, edit the jvm.options file.

1. Find the jvm.options file in the following directory:

<elasticsearch installation directory>/config

2. Use a text editor to open the file, and edit the following properties:

| Property         | Description   |
|------------------|---|
| -Xms             | Minimum heap size. Default is 1 GB.   |
| -Xmx             | Maximum heap size. Default is 1 GB.   |
| -XX:HeapDumpPath | Heap dump path. Default is /var/lib/elasticsearch. In a multi-cluster environment, you must set this property to an alternative path. |

**Note:** Set the minimum heap size (Xms) and the maximum heap size (Xmx) to the same value. Use the default settings for other properties.

## Configure the Elasticsearch Properties File

Informatica provides a sample Elasticsearch properties file. To configure Elasticsearch, edit the properties file.

- 1. Find the elasticsearch.yml file in the following directory: <elasticsearch installation directory>/config
- 2. Use a text editor to open the file, and edit the following properties:

| Property                           | Description  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| bootstrap.memory_lock              | Sets up memory locking. To prevent any Elasticsearch memory from being swapped out, set to true. Default is true.  |
| cluster.name                       | Specify a unique name for the Elasticsearch cluster. If you have multiple clusters, ensure that the name of each cluster is unique. If a cluster has multiple nodes, ensure that on each node of the cluster, the same cluster name is specified.  |
| discovery.zen.minimum_master_nodes | Required for a multi-node cluster to prevent data loss and maintain cluster stability. Set to the following value: (number of master-eligible nodes / 2) + 1  For example, if a cluster has three nodes, all of which are master-eligible nodes and can contain data, then set the property to (3 / 2) + 1, which is rounded to 2. |
| discovery.zen.ping.unicast.hosts   | Required for a multi-node cluster. This property is used to specify the discovery setting, which is a list of IP addresses and transport ports of the nodes in the cluster. Use the following format to set the property: ["host1:port1", "host2:port2", "host3:port3"]  |
| http.port                          | Port for the HTTP requests. Default is 9200.   |
| network.host                       | The IP address of the host to use as the bind address.   |

| Property                                      | Description  |
|---|--|
| node.data                                     | Enables a node as a data node that performs data related operations, such as CRUD and search. Default is true.   |
| node.ingest                                   | Enables a node as an ingest node that transforms and enriches the data before indexing. Default is true.   |
| node.master                                   | Enables a node as a master node that controls the cluster. If a cluster has multiple nodes, enable at least one of the nodes as a master node. For high availability, set multiple nodes as master nodes. Default is true.   |
| node.name                                     | Specify a unique name for the node.  |
| path.data                                     | Path to the directory where you want to store the data.<br>You can configure multiple data directories. For more<br>information about configuring multiple data directories,<br>see the Elasticsearch documentation.   |
| path.logs                                     | Path to the log files.   |
| transport.tcp.port                            | The TCP bind port. Default is 9300.  |
| searchguard.enterprise_modules_enabled        | Specifies whether you want to enable Search Guard Enterprise Edition. To avoid license violation, always set the property to false.  The MDM Hub installer includes Search Guard Community Edition, which is free. Informatica does not include a license for Search Guard Enterprise Edition. |
| searchguard.ssl.transport.keystore_type       | The type of keystore file. Set to JKS. Default is JKS.   |
| searchguard.ssl.transport.keystore_filepath   | Relative path to the keystore file. If you used the sip_ant script to create the keystore, use the default path. Default is MDM_ESKEYSTORE_FILE_JKS.keystore.  |
| searchguard.ssl.transport.keystore_password   | The keystore password. Default is infa@1234.   |
| searchguard.ssl.transport.truststore_type     | The type of truststore file. Set to <code>JKS</code> . Default is <code>JKS</code> .   |
| searchguard.ssl.transport.truststore_filepath | Relative path to the truststore file. If you used the sip_ant script to create the truststore, use the default path. Default is MDM_ESTRUSTSTORE_FILE_JKS.keystore.  |
| searchguard.ssl.transport.truststore_password | The truststore password. Default is infa@1234.   |
| searchguard.ssl.http.enabled                  | Specifies whether you want to enable transport layer security (TLS) on the REST layer. Set to true. Default is true.   |

| Property  | Description  |
|---|--|
| searchguard.ssl.http.clientauth_mode                    | Specifies whether you want to use the TLS client authentication mode on the REST layer. Set to REQUIRE.  Default is REQUIRE.   |
| searchguard.ssl.http.keystore_type                      | The type of keystore file. Set to JKS. Default is JKS.   |
| searchguard.ssl.http.keystore_filepath                  | Relative path to the keystore file. If you used the sip_ant script to create the keystore, use the default path. Default is MDM_ESCLIENT_FILE_JKS.keystore.  |
| searchguard.ssl.http.keystore_password                  | The keystore password. Default is infa@1234.   |
| searchguard.ssl.http.truststore_type                    | The type of truststore file. Set to <code>JKS</code> . Default is <code>JKS</code> .   |
| searchguard.ssl.http.truststore_filepath                | Relative path to the truststore file. If you used the sip_ant script to create the truststore, use the default path. Default is MDM_ESTRUSTSTORE_FILE_JKS.keystore.  |
| searchguard.ssl.http.truststore_password                | The truststore password. Default is infa@1234.   |
| searchguard.cert.oid                                    | The object identifier (OID) of the client certificate. Default is 1.2.3.4.5.5.  If you used the sip_ant script to create the certificates, use the default OID.  If you did not use the sip_ant script to create the security certificates, you might need to set this property. |
| searchguard.ssl.transport.enforce_hostname_verification | Specifies whether you want to verify host names on the transport layer. If the certificates are not created by using the sip_ant script, set to true. Default is false.  |
| searchguard.nodes_dn                                    | The DNs of the node certificates to identify requests between the nodes in the Elasticsearch cluster. If you used the sip_ant script to create the certificates, use the default value. Default is - CN=EsNode.  |
| searchguard.authcz.admin_dn                             | The DN of the client certificate that is also an administrative certificate. If you used the sip_ant script to create the certificates, use the default value. Default is - CN=EsClient.   |

3. Save the properties file with the same name, <code>elasticsearch.yml</code>.

#### Secure the Elasticsearch Cluster

To secure the Elasticsearch cluster, configure the Search Guard security plugin. To configure the security plugin, edit the Search Guard sample configuration files, which include the required settings.

 $\textbf{Note:} \ \textbf{If you use certificates created by the } \textbf{sip\_ant script, do not edit the sample configuration files.}$ 

Find the Search Guard sample configuration files in the following directory:
 <elasticsearch installation directory>/plugins/search-guard-6/sgconfig

2. If you did not use the sip\_ant script to create the security certificates, use a text editor to open the files, and edit the parameters.

| Configuration File  | Purpose  | Required Edit  |
|---------------------|--|--|
| sg_config.yml       | Authentication and authorization configuration | Update the username_attribute. Default is cn.  |
| sg_roles.yml        | User role<br>configuration                     | Add the sg_mdm_access role for the MDM Hub. The role is required, because the client and administrator certificates for Elasticsearch are different and need to be mapped to this role.      |
| sg_role_mapping.yml | User role mappings configuration               | Map the common name of the client certificate to the sg_mdm_access role. By default, the administrator and client roles are mapped to the common name of the client certificate CN=EsClient. |

For more information about Search Guard configuration files, see the Search Guard documentation.

### Upload the Search Guard Configuration to Elasticsearch

To upload the Search Guard configuration to Elasticsearch, use the Search Guard sgadmin tool. You can upload the configuration from any machine that has access to your Elasticsearch cluster. When you upload the configuration, Search Guard is initialized and Elasticsearch is secured.

▶ Open a command prompt, and run the following command:

```
sgadmin.bat -h <IP address of the host> -p <bind port>
-cd <elasticsearch installation directory>/plugins/search-guard-6/sgconfig
-ks <elasticsearch installation directory>/config/MDM_ESCLIENT_FILE_JKS.keystore
-kspass <password>
-ts <elasticsearch installation directory>/config/MDM_ESTRUSTSTORE_FILE_JKS.keystore
-tspass <password>
-cn <cluster name>
-nhnv -tst JKS -kst JKS
```

Note: If the cluster has a single node, remove -cn <cluster name> from the command.

After you upload the Search Guard configuration, ensure that you start each node of the Elasticsearch cluster for the changes to take effect.

## Configure the Client Certificate DN in the Elasticsearch Properties File

After you initialize and secure Elasticsearch by uploading the Search Guard configuration to Elasticsearch, configure the DN of a client certificate.

Note: Ensure that the client certificate for which you configure the DN is not an administrative certificate.

- Find the elasticsearch.yml file in the following directory:
  - <elasticsearch installation directory>/config
- 2. Use a text editor to open the file, and edit the searchguard.authcz.admin\_dn property.
  The default is CN=EsClient. Change the default value. Set the DN of a client certificate that is not an
- 3. Save and close the file.

administrative certificate.

#### Customize the List of Words to Ignore in Searches

When you perform a search, the MDM Hub ignores common words such as "and", "an", and "is". You can use the default list of common words to ignore in a search or you can customize the list. To customize the list of words to ignore in a search, edit the stopwords.txt file.

1. Use a text editor to open the stopwords.txt file in the following location:

```
<elasticsearch installation directory>/config/analysis
```

- 2. Edit and save the stopwords.txt file.
- 3. If data was indexed before you edited the stopwords.txt file, manually delete the indexes, restart Elasticsearch, and then, reindex the data.

For more information about updating the stopwords.txt file, see the Elasticsearch documentation.

### Customize the List of Synonyms to Include in Searches

When you perform a search, the MDM Hub can search for synonyms of the search string that you specify. For example, when you search for "William", the search result includes the synonyms "Will" and "Willy". You can define the synonyms in the synonyms.txt file.

To customize the synonyms to use in a search, edit the synonyms.txt file.

Use a text editor to open the synonyms.txt file in the following location:

```
<elasticsearch installation directory>/config/analysis
```

- 2. Edit and save the synonyms.txt file.
- 3. If data was indexed before you edited the synonyms.txt file, manually delete the indexes, restart Elasticsearch, and then, reindex the data.

For more information about updating the synonyms.txt file, see the Elasticsearch documentation.

#### Start Elasticsearch

After you set up Elasticsearch, start each node of the Elasticsearch cluster for the changes to take effect.

1. Open a command prompt, and change to the following directory:

```
<elasticsearch installation directory>/bin
```

2. Run the following command:

```
On UNIX. elasticsearch.sh
```

On Windows. elasticsearch.bat

## Step 2. Configure the MDM Hub Properties for Search

To configure the MDM Hub properties, use the Hub Console, the Process Server properties file, and the Hub Server properties file.

- 1. Configure the Process Server properties.
- 2. Configure the Hub Server properties.

#### Configure the Hub Server for Search

You must configure all the Hub Server instances to enable search. Use the Hub Server tool in the Hub Console and the cmxserver.properties file to configure the Hub Server properties for search.

- 1. Use a text editor to open the cmxserver.properties file in the following location: <MDM Hub Installation Directory>\hub\server\resources\cmxserver.properties
- 2. Configure the following properties for search:

#### cmx.ss.engine

Required if you want to use the Elasticsearch engine for search. Manually add the property and set to es.

#### cmx.ss.dirtyIndex.disable

Applicable to the Solr search engine and will be deprecated. Set to true for Elasticsearch. Default is false.

#### ex.max.conn.per.host

Sets the maximum number of Elasticsearch nodes that you want to connect to the host. Set to the number of Elasticsearch cluster nodes on the host.

#### ex.max.threads

Sets the maximum number of threads that you want the Apache asynchronous non-blocking receiver to use for each node in the Elasticsearch cluster. Default is 1.

Change the value only when suggested by Informatica Global Customer Support.

#### es.index.refresh.interval

Sets the interval, in seconds, for Elasticsearch to commit the changes to the data after an Initially Index Smart Search Data batch job is run. The data is available for search after this time interval. Default is 30.

This property impacts the high indexing volume encountered during initial indexing. Change the value only when suggested by Informatica Global Customer Support.

#### ssl.keyStore

Required if you use the HTTPS port of the application server to configure the Hub Server. Manually add the property. Absolute path and file name of the keystore file.

#### ssl.keyStore.password

Required if you use the HTTPS port of the application server to configure the Hub Server. Manually add the property. Plain text password for the keystore file.

#### ssl.trustStore

Required if you use the HTTPS port of the application server to configure the Hub Server. Manually add the property. Absolute path and file name of the truststore file.

#### ssl.trustStore.password

Required if you use the HTTPS port of the application server to configure the Hub Server. Manually add the property. Plain text password for the truststore file.

After you update the Hub Server properties, you must validate the Operational Reference Store (ORS), and restart the Hub Console.

#### Configure Process Servers for Search

When you configure search with Elasticsearch, enable search on all the Process Server instances. Use the Process Server tool in the Hub Console and the cmxcleanse.properties file to configure the Process Server properties for search.

- 1. In the Hub Console of a node, start the Process Server tool.
- 2. Click Write Lock > Acquire Lock.
- 3. In the right pane of the Process Server tool, click the **Add Process Server** button.

The Add/Edit Process Server dialog box appears.

4. Set the following properties of a Process Server for search:

| Property                    | Description  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| Enable Search<br>Processing | Indicates whether to enable search on the Process Server. Ensure that you select the option to enable search.  |
| Enable ZooKeeper            | Indicates whether to use the Process Server as the ZooKeeper server for the search configuration with Solr.  For search with Elasticsearch, ensure that you clear the option to disable ZooKeeper. |

- 5. Click OK, and then click Save.
- 6. Edit the cmxcleanse.properties file.

The cmxcleanse.properties file in the following location:<MDM Hub Installation Directory>\hub \cleanse\resources

a. Configure the following properties for search:

#### cmx.ss.engine

Required if you want to use the Elasticsearch engine for search. Manually add the property and set to es.

#### ex.max.conn.per.host

Sets the maximum number of Elasticsearch nodes that you want to connect to the host. Set to the number of Elasticsearch cluster nodes on the host.

#### ex.max.threads

Sets the maximum number of threads that you want the Apache asynchronous non-blocking receiver to use for each node in the Elasticsearch cluster. Default is 1.

Change the value only when suggested by Informatica Global Customer Support.

- b. Remove the following properties that are configured for search with Solr:
  - solr.allowAdminConsole
  - zookeeper.tickTime
  - pingSolrOnStartup
- 7. Save the cmxcleanse.properties file.
- 8. Restart the application server.

## Step 3. Configure Search by Using the Provisioning Tool

After you set up Elasticsearch and configure the MDM Hub properties, use the Provisioning tool to configure the search environment.

- 1. Configure the Elasticsearch cluster.
- 2. Configure the search result views.

#### Configure the Elasticsearch Cluster

Use the Provisioning tool to configure the Elasticsearch cluster. The search APIs use the configuration. The Data Director application and any custom applications use the search APIs.

Note: When you configure the Elasticsearch cluster, only master nodes must be specified.

Open a supported browser, and enter the following URL:

The **Login** page appears.

- 2. Enter the user name and password, and click Log In.
- 3. Select the Operational Reference Store (ORS) for which you want to create the Elasticsearch cluster.
- 4. Click Configuration > Infrastructure Settings.

The Infrastructure Settings page appears.

- 5. Select Elastic Search Cluster from the list, and click Create.
- 6. In the tree view, under ESCluster, select esNode, and click Create.
- 7. Configure the following Elasticsearch cluster properties:

| Property | Description  |
|----------|--|
| Name     | Name of the master node in the Elasticsearch cluster.  |
| URL      | URL of the master node in the Elasticsearch cluster. The URL format is https:// <hostname>:<port>.</port></hostname> |

- Click Apply
- 9. If you want to create additional master nodes, repeat steps 6 through 8.
- Publish the changes to the MDM Hub.
  - Click Publish.

A change confirmation dialog box appears that prompts you to confirm the changes.

b. Review the changes, and click Confirm.

A validation process runs on the application. A confirmation dialog box appears that prompts you to publish the changes.

- c. Click one of the following buttons:
  - Publish. Saves the changes to the MDM Hub.

• No. The changes remain in the temporary workspace.

#### Configure the Search Result Views

You can use the Provisioning tool to configure the business entity views that you want to use for search. A search result includes only the fields that are part of the business entity view that you configure for search results

Before you configure the searchable views, create the business entity views that you want to use for the search results.

1. Open a supported browser, and use the following URL to log into the Provisioning tool:

```
https://<MDM Hub Server host name>:<MDM Server port number>/provisioning/
```

- 2. From the **Database** list, select the database with which your application is associated.
- 3. Click Configuration > Application Editor.

The **Applications** page appears.

4. From the **Applications** list, select the application for which you want to configure search.

If you do not have an application, create one before you can configure search.

- 5. In the tree view panel, click the Search Configuration node.
- 6. In the properties panel, for each business entity, select the search view.

If you do not select a search view, the search results contain the full business entity.

7. Click Apply.

The search views configuration is saved to the temporary workspace.

- 8. Publish the changes to the MDM Hub.
  - a. Click Publish.

A change confirmation dialog box appears that prompts you to confirm the changes.

b. Review the changes, and click Confirm.

A validation process runs on the application. A confirmation dialog box appears that prompts you to publish the changes.

- c. Click one of the following buttons:
  - Publish. Saves the changes to the MDM Hub.
  - No. The changes remain in the temporary workspace.

### Step 4. Validate the Operational Reference Store

To validate the metadata of the Operational Reference Store (ORS) that is affected by the Elasticsearch configuration, use the Repository Manager tool in the Hub Console.

- 1. Start the Hub Console and connect to the MDM Hub Master Database.
- Expand the Configuration workbench, and click Repository Manager.

The Repository Manager appears.

- 3. Click the Validate tab, and select the repository to validate.
- 4. Click Validate.

The Select Validation Checks dialog box appears.

- Select the validation checks to perform.
- 6. Click OK.

The Repository Manager validates the repository and displays any issues in the Issues Found pane.

7. To repair issues, click Repair.

### Step 5. Index the Search Data

If your environment contains data, manually run the Initially Index Smart Search Data batch job to index the data. If your environment does not contain any data, you do not need to run the Initially Index Smart Search Data job. When you run the Load batch job to load data, the Load batch job automatically runs the Initially Index Smart Search Data batch job and indexes the data. A search request uses the indexes to search for records.

Run the Initially Index Smart Search Data batch job on all the base objects that contribute to the business entities. When you run the Initially Index Smart Search Data batch job on a base object, the Elasticsearch server indexes the data in the searchable fields. The job then adds the indexed data to all the collections that represent the business entities to which the searchable fields belong. If a collection is too large, you can split the collection into one or more shards. Shards are the logical pieces of a collection split over multiple nodes. When you perform a search, the Elasticsearch server reads the collections and returns the matching fields.

The Initially Index Smart Search Data batch job indexes the records asynchronously and reports successful completion after the job queues the indexing request for all the records. A search request can show the indexed records only after the successful completion of the index request, which might take a few minutes.

**Important:** If you update the searchable properties of a field after you index your data, the indexes are deleted. You must run the Initially Index Smart Search Data batch job to index the data. In addition, the indexing process is a resource-intensive process, so do not run multiple Initially Index Smart Search Data batch jobs in parallel.

#### CHAPTER 11

# ActiveVOS Post-Installation Tasks for the Application Server

This chapter includes the following topic:

· ActiveVOS Post-Installation Tasks for the Application Server, 154

## ActiveVOS Post-Installation Tasks for the Application Server

Whether you perform a clean upgrade or an in-place upgrade, perform the ActiveVOS post-installation tasks for the application server to ensure your environment is properly configured.

For ActiveVOS post-installation tasks for the application server, see the ActiveVOS Post-Installation Tasks for the Application Server chapter in the *Multidomain MDM Installation Guide* that applies to your environment.

#### CHAPTER 12

# ActiveVOS Post-Upgrade Tasks for Business Entity Adapter

This chapter includes the following topics:

- ActiveVOS Post-Upgrade Tasks for the Business Entity Adapter, 155
- Configuring the ActiveVOS URNs for the Business Entity Workflow Adapter, 156
- Set the ActiveVOS Protocol to HTTPS, 156
- Update Customized Workflows for Business Entities, 157
- Configure the MDM Identity Services for ActiveVOS, 160
- Custom BeMDMWorkflow Project (In-place Upgrade), 160
- Configure Unmerge and Merge Workflow Triggers (In-place Upgrade), 161
- Add the Entity 360 Framework Task Manager, 161

## ActiveVOS Post-Upgrade Tasks for the Business Entity Adapter

Whether you perform a clean upgrade or an in-place upgrade, if you use the ActiveVOS workflow adapter based on business entities, perform the ActiveVOS post-upgrade tasks for the business entity adapter to ensure your environment is properly configured.

## Configuring the ActiveVOS URNs for the Business Entity Workflow Adapter

The ActiveVOS Server has two predefined uniform resource names (URNs) that it uses internally. You need to update the URL in the URN mappings to use the host name and the port number where the ActiveVOS Server runs.

 Launch the ActiveVOS Console. In a browser, type the following URL, substituting the correct host name and port number:

Encrypted connections. https://[host]:[port]/activevos

Non-encrypted connections.http://[host]:[port]/activevos

- In the ActiveVOS Console, on the Home page, click Administration > Configure Server > URN Mappings.
- For the following URNs, update the paths to reflect the host name and port number of the ActiveVOS Server:

| URN                   | URL Path  |  |
|-----------------------|---|--|
| ae:internal-reporting | <pre>Encrypted connections. https://[host]:[port]/activevos/internalreports Non-encrypted connections. http://[host]:[port]/activevos/internalreports</pre> |  |
| ae:task-inbox         | <pre>Encrypted connections. https://[host]:[port]/activevos-central/avc Non-encrypted connections. http://[host]:[port]/activevos-central/avc</pre>         |  |

4. Verify that urn:mdm:service is mapped to the host name and port number of the MDM Hub Server:

Encrypted connections.https://[host]:[port]/cmx/services/BeServices

Non-encrypted connections.http://[host]:[port]/cmx/services/BeServices

### Set the ActiveVOS Protocol to HTTPS

To enable secure communication between ActiveVOS and the MDM Hub, set the protocol to HTTPS in the Hub Console Workflow Manager.

You must first configure the application server for HTTPS communications.

- 1. Start the Hub Console.
- 2. Acquire a write lock.
- 3. Click Workflow Manager under the Configuration workbench.
- 4. In the Workflow Manager, click the Workflow Engines tab.
- 5. Select the ActiveVOS workflow engine, and then click the **Edit** button.
- 6. In the Edit Workflow dialog box, set the protocol to HTTPS.
- In a WebLogic environment, in the Edit Workflow dialog box, enter the user name and password of the user that belongs to the abAdmin role.

## **Update Customized Workflows for Business Entities**

If you have customized workflows that work with the business entities adapter, review the list of changes and make updates to your customized workflows as required.

The following table lists the changes that were made to the default workflows over the releases:

| Release     | Change   | Instructions  |
|-------------|--|---|
| 10 HotFix 1 | Enable password encryption.                            | For each workflow, set sif:encrypted to true.                                     |
| 10 HotFix 1 | Update the presentation parameters for the task inbox. | "Updating Presentation Parameters in Workflows for Business Entities" on page 157 |
| 10.3        | Enable the file attachments feature.                   | "Enabling File Attachments in Workflows for Business<br>Entities" on page 159     |

## Updating Presentation Parameters in Workflows for Business Entities

If you customized a workflow based on business entities, open the .bpel file and update the presentation parameters for each task.

The following table lists the updated presentation parameters:

| Parameter              | Expression  |
|------------------------|---|
| hubUsername            | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:hubUsername/text()                      |
| hubPassword            | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:hubPassword/text()                      |
| securityPayload        | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:securityPayload/text()                  |
| orsId                  | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:orsId/text()                            |
| taskTypeName           | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskType/mdmavxsd:name/text()           |
| taskTypeDisplayName    | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskType/mdmavxsd:displayName/text()    |
| taskTypeDescription    | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskType/mdmavxsd:description/text()    |
| pendingBVT             | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskType/mdmavxsd:pendingBVT            |
| taskTypeDataUpdateType | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskType/mdmavxsd:dataUpdateType/text() |
| taskTypeDisplayType    | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskType/mdmavxsd:displayType/text()    |
| defaultApproval        | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskType/mdmavxsd:defaultApproval       |

| Parameter              | Expression  |
|------------------------|---|
| taskDataTaskId         | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskData/mdmavxsd:taskId/text()   |
| taskDataOwnerUID       | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskData/mdmavxsd:ownerUID/text()   |
| taskDataGroups         | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskData/mdmavxsd:groups/mdmavxsd:groups/text()   |
| dueDate                | let \$in := \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskData/<br>mdmavxsd:dueDate/text() let \$out :=                             |
| status                 | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskData/mdmavxsd:status/text()   |
| taskDataPriority       | <pre>length(\$out) &gt; 0))), string-length(\$out) + (string-length(\$in )) * xsd:int((string-length(\$out) = 0)))</pre>                  |
| taskDataSubjectAreaUID | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskData/mdmavxsd:subjectAreaUID/text()   |
| taskDataTitle          | let \$in := \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskData/<br>mdmavxsd:title/text() let \$out :=                               |
| taskDataComments       | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskData/mdmavxsd:comments/text()   |
| taskDataInteractionId  | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskData/mdmavxsd:interactionId/text()  |
| taskDataCreator        | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskData/mdmavxsd:creator/text()  |
| createDate             | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskData/mdmavxsd:createDate  |
| taskDataUpdatedBy      | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskData/mdmavxsd:updatedBy/text()  |
| lastUpdateDate         | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskData/<br>mdmavxsd:lastUpdateDate  |
| workflowVersion        | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:workflowVersion/text()  |
| beRowld                | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskData/<br>mdmavxsd:taskRecords/mdmavxsd:INFARecordKey[1]/mdmavxsd:rowld/text()         |
| bePkeySrcObject        | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskData/<br>mdmavxsd:taskRecords/mdmavxsd:INFARecordKey[1]/mdmavxsd:pkeySrcObject/text() |
| beSystem               | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskData/<br>mdmavxsd:taskRecords/mdmavxsd:INFARecordKey[1]/mdmavxsd:system/text()        |
| beRowidXref            | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskData/<br>mdmavxsd:taskRecords/mdmavxsd:INFARecordKey[1]/mdmavxsd:rowidXref/text()     |

| Parameter            | Expression   |
|----------------------|--|
| beTableUID           | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskData/mdmavxsd:taskRecords/mdmavxsd:INFARecordKey[1]/mdmavxsd:tableUID/text() |
| taskTypeCreationType | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskType/mdmavxsd:creationType/text()  |

For more information about updating the .bpel files, see the ActiveVOS documentation.

### Enabling File Attachments in Workflows for Business Entities

Effective in version 10.3, you can update your customized workflows to allow users to attach files to their tasks. To enable this feature in a customized workflow, update the process that initializes the data and update all the user processes.

**Note:** If you want to restrict the ability to add attachments to some tasks, you can configure the task settings in the Provisioning Tool. For more information about updating the task configuration, see the *Multidomain MDM Provisioning Tool Guide*.

1. In ActiveVOS Designer, open the .bpel file for a customized workflow.

The workflow appears in the canvas.

- 2. Update the process that initializes the data.
  - a. Select the Initialize Data process.

The **Operations** dialog box appears.

b. Click New Script.

The Script Builder dialog box appears.

c. In the **Script** box, add the following statement:

```
abx:copyAllAttachments('StartRequest', '_peopleActivityAttachments')
```

Replace StartRequest with the variable name that you use to initialize data in your workflow.

d. Click OK.

The Script Builder dialog box closes, and the script appears in the Operation list.

e. Click OK.

The **Operations** dialog box closes.

- Update all the user processes.
  - a. Select a user process.
  - b. Click the Properties tab.
  - c. Click the All tab.
  - d. Expand Attachment Propagation.
  - e. Set From Process to All.
  - f. Set To Process to newOnly.
- 4. Save the .bpel file.

## Configure the MDM Identity Services for ActiveVOS

If you use embedded ActiveVOS, ensure that you configure ActiveVOS to use MDM Identity Services. To configure the MDM Identity Services for ActiveVOS, use the ActiveVOS Console to set the Identity Services password to the password of the MDM Hub workflow engine user.

- 1. In the ActiveVOS console, select Admin > Configure Services > Identity Services.
- In the Provider Configuration section, enable the Enable check box and select MDM from the Provider Type list.
- 3. In the Connection tab, enter the password of the MDM Hub user with the user name admin.

**Note:** If you later change the password for the admin user, you must enter the new password in the ActiveVOS identity services settings.

- Click Update.
- 5. Test that ActiveVOS can log in to the MDM Hub as the admin user, and that ActiveVOS can retrieve a list of roles for the user you specify as the **User for test**.
  - a. Select the Test tab.
  - b. In the User for test field, enter an MDM Hub user that is assigned to a role.
  - c. Click Test Settings.

**Note:** The test fails if an Operational Reference Store is not configured, the user for test does not belong to a role, or the role name contains spaces.

### Custom BeMDMWorkflow Project (In-place Upgrade)

If you customized the workflows for the BeMDMWorkflow project, ensure that you update and then redeploy the project.

- In Informatica ActiveVOS Designer, use the Project Explorer to navigate to BeCommonMDM > wsdl > cs wsdl
- 2. Right-click cs.wsdl, and then select Open With > Text Editor.
- 3. In the text editor, navigate to the following code:

4. Add the following code:

```
<xsd:element minOccurs="0" name="overdueOnly" type="xsd:boolean" />
```

- 5. In Informatica ActiveVOS Designer, open the BeCommonMDM project to export.
- Click File > Export.

The **Export** dialog box opens.

- 7. Under Orchestration, select Contribution Business Process Archive. Click Next.
- In the Deployment URL field under Server Deployment Option, enter the URL for the ActiveVOS instance.
   Click Finish.
- 9. In the Deployment Complete dialog box, click OK.

## Configure Unmerge and Merge Workflow Triggers (Inplace Upgrade)

You must configure the unmerge and merge workflow triggers that were introduced in Multidomain MDM version 10.2. To configure the unmerge and merge workflow triggers, use the Provisioning tool.

For more information, see the Multidomain MDM Provisioning Tool Guide.

## Add the Entity 360 Framework Task Manager

When you use the business entity ActiveVOS workflow adapter, you use the Entity 360 framework Task Manager and Entity 360 framework task inbox.

Update the Informatica Data Director configuration to replace the legacy task inbox. You can add the Entity 360 framework task inbox to the **Home** page. For more information about designing the Informatica Data Director user interface, see the *Multidomain MDM Provisioning Tool Guide*.

#### CHAPTER 13

# ActiveVOS Post-Upgrade Tasks for Subject Areas Adapter

This chapter includes the following topics:

- ActiveVOS Post-Upgrade Tasks for the Subject Area Adapter, 162
- Update the ActiveVOS URNs, 162
- Verifying the Trusted User for ActiveVOS, 163
- Update Informatica Data Director Task Configuration for ActiveVOS Workflows based on Subject Areas, 163
- · Update Customized Workflows for Subject Areas, 166
- Redeploy the ActiveVOS Workflows based on Subject Areas, 168
- · Generating Business Entity and Business Entity Services Configuration Files, 168

## ActiveVOS Post-Upgrade Tasks for the Subject Area Adapter

Whether you perform a clean upgrade or an in-place upgrade, if you use the ActiveVOS workflow adapter based on subject areas, perform the ActiveVOS post-upgrade tasks for the subject area adapter to ensure your environment is properly configured.

### Update the ActiveVOS URNs

To use the HTTP Secure (HTTPS) protocol for secure communication between the MDM Hub and ActiveVOS, change the URLs in the URN paths from http to https.

1. Launch the ActiveVOS Console. In a browser, type the following URL, substituting the correct host name and port number:

 $\textbf{Secure connections}. \ \texttt{https://<host>:<port>/activevos}$ 

Non-secure connections. http://<host>:<port>/activevos

2. In the ActiveVOS Console, on the Home page, click Administration > Configure Server > URN Mappings.

3. For the following URNs, update the paths to reflect the host name and port number of the ActiveVOS Server:

| URN                   | URL Path  |
|-----------------------|---|
| ae:internal-reporting | Secure connections. https:// <host>:<port>/activevos/internalreports Non-secure connections. http://<host>:<port>/activevos/internalreports</port></host></port></host> |
| ae:task-inbox         | Secure connections. https:// <host>:<port>/activevos-central/avc Non-secure connections. http://<host>:<port>/activevos-central/avc</port></host></port></host>         |

4. Verify that MDMHost:InfaMDM is mapped to the host name and port number of the MDM Hub Server:

Secure connections.https://<host>:<port>/cmx/services/SifService

Non-secure connections.http://<host>:<port>/cmx/services/SifService

## Verifying the Trusted User for ActiveVOS

In the Hub Console, verify that the ActiveVOS workflow engine settings specifies the trusted user.

- 1. In the Hub Console, on the Configuration workbench, click Workflow Manager.
- Select the Workflow Engines tab.
- 3. Acquire a write lock.
- 4. Select ActiveVOS and click the Edit button.
- In the Edit Workflow dialog box, enter the user name and password of the trusted user
- 6. Click OK.

## Update Informatica Data Director Task Configuration for ActiveVOS Workflows based on Subject Areas

To use the subject area-based ActiveVOS workflow adapter with the Task Manager, you must update the Informatica Data Director configuration file. If you use ActiveVOS workflows based on subject areas, you cannot migrate to ActiveVOS workflows based on business entities.

You can configure the following task parameters in the Informatica Data Director configuration file:

#### taskType

Describes the task type.

#### taskTypeID

The process name.

#### name

The taskType name. The name must be the same as the name of the task in the ActiveVOS workflow configuration.

## Update the IDD Configuration for the Subject Area-based ActiveVOS Adapter

To use the subject area-based ActiveVOS workflow adapter with the business entity-based Task Manager, update the Data Director configuration file. If you do not update the Data Director configuration file, you cannot use the Task Manager to create tasks.

The following code sample shows how to configure subject area-based ActiveVOS tasks in the Data Director configuration file for the workflows provided with Multidomain MDM:

```
<tasks includeUnassignedTasks="true">
<!-- Task Definitions -->
<taskType taskTypeId="IDDMergeTask" name="AVOSMerge" displayName="Merge"</pre>
creationType="MERGE" displayType="MERGE">
  <description>Merge two records together.</description>
<taskType taskTypeId="IDDUnmergeTask" name="AVOSUnmerge" displayName="Unmerge"</pre>
creationType="UNMERGE" displayType="UNMERGE">
  <description>Unmerge an XREF record from a Base Object record.
  </description>
</taskType>
<taskType taskTypeId="IDDOneStepApprovalTask" name="AVOSFinalReview"</pre>
displayType="NORMAL" displayName="Final review" creationType="NONE" pendingBVT="true">
  <description>Update a record and require the user to go through an approval process
before completing the task.
  </description>
</taskType>
<taskType name="Notification" displayName="Notification" creationType="NONE"</pre>
displayType="NORMAL">
   <description>Notification step in the workflow</description>
</taskType>
<taskType taskTypeId="IDDTwoStepApprovalTask" name="AVOSReviewNoApprove"</pre>
 displayType="NORMAL" displayName="Review no approve" creationType="NONE"
 defaultApproval="true" pendingBVT="true">
  <description>Update a record and require the user to go through an approval process
    before completing the task.
  </description>
</taskType>
<taskType taskTypeId="IDDUpdateWithApprovalTask" name="Update" displayType="NORMAL"</pre>
displayName="Update" creationType="CREATE" pendingBVT="true">
  <description>Update a record and do not require the user to go through an approval
    process before completing the task. The approval step is optional.
  </description>
</taskType>
</tasks>
```

### Configure Task Triggers For Subject Area Workflow Adapter

You must configure task triggers to use ActiveVOS workflows based on subject areas with the Task Manager. If you do not configure task triggers, the tasks do not appear in the Task Manager.

To configure triggers, use the Provisioning tool to edit the task configuration file from the Advance Configuration page. For more information, see the *Multidomain MDM Provisioning Tool Guide*.

You can configure the following startWorkflow attributes to configure task triggers:

#### process

The name of the ActiveVOS workflow process.

#### taskKind

Defines the type of user interface required for the process. Can be REVIEW, MERGE, or UNMERGE. The taskKind is returned by the ActiveVOS workflow engine.

#### taskTemplate

The name of the task template to use.

#### firstTask Type

The first task in the workflow. Optional. This parameter allows the task to be assigned when the task is created.

#### Two-step approval code sample

The following code sample shows the startWorkflow element configuration for the ActiveVOS adapter based on subject areas for the two-step approval task:

```
<trigger name="DefaultApproval">
<startWorkflow process="IDDTwoStepApprovalTask" taskKind="REVIEW"
taskTemplate="DefaultApproval" firstTaskType="AVOSReviewNoApprove"/>
<event name="CreateBE"/>
<event name="UpdateBE"/>
<role name="*"/>
</trigger>
```

#### One-step approval code sample

The following code sample shows the startWorkflow element configuration for the ActiveVOS adapter based on subject areas for the one-step approval task:

```
<trigger name="DefaultApproval">
<startWorkflow process="IDDOneStepApprovalTask" taskKind="REVIEW"
taskTemplate="DefaultApproval" firstTaskType="AVOSFinalReview"/>
<event name="CreateBE"/>
<event name="UpdateBE"/>
<role name="*"/>
</trigger>
```

#### Update with approval code sample

The following code sample shows the startWorkflow element configuration for the ActiveVOS adapter based on subject areas for the update-with-approval task:

```
<trigger name="DefaultApproval">
<startWorkflow process="IDDUpdateWithApprovalTask" taskKind="REVIEW"
taskTemplate="DefaultApproval" firstTaskType="Update"/>
<event name="CreateBE"/>
<event name="UpdateBE"/>
<role name="*"/>
</trigger>
```

#### Merge code sample

The following code sample shows the startWorkflow element configuration for the ActiveVOS adapter based on subject areas for the merge task:

```
<trigger name="Matched">
<startWorkflow process="IDDMergeTask" taskKind="MERGE"
taskTemplate="MergeTaskGenerator" firstTaskType="AVOSMerge"/>
<event name="MatchedBE"/>
<role name="SYSTEM"/>
</trigger>
```

## Update Customized Workflows for Subject Areas

If you have customized workflows that work with the subject area adapter, review the list of changes and make updates to your customized workflows as required.

The following table lists the changes that were made to the default workflows over the releases:

| Release     | Change   | Instructions  |
|-------------|--|---|
| 10 HotFix 1 | Enable password encryption.                            | For each workflow, set sif:encrypted to true.                                 |
| 10 HotFix 1 | Update the presentation parameters for the task inbox. | "Updating Presentation Parameters in Workflows for Subject Areas" on page 166 |
| 10.3        | Enable the file attachments feature.                   | "Enabling Attachments in Workflows for Subject Areas" on page 167             |

### Updating Presentation Parameters in Workflows for Subject Areas

If you customized a workflow based on subject areas, open the .bpel file and update the presentation parameters for each task.

The following table lists the updated presentation parameters:

| Parameter              | Type    | Expression   |
|------------------------|---------|--|
| subjectareauid         | string  | \$InfaTask/mdmavxsd:taskData/mdmavxsd:subjectAreaUID                             |
| title                  | string  | \$InfaTask/mdmavxsd:taskData/mdmavxsd:title                                      |
| creator                | string  | \$InfaTask/mdmavxsd:taskData/mdmavxsd:creator                                    |
| mdmtasktype            | string  | \$InfaTask/mdmavxsd:taskType/mdmavxsd:name                                       |
| orsId                  | string  | \$InfaTask/mdmavxsd:orsId  |
| duedate                | string  | \$InfaTask/mdmavxsd:taskData/mdmavxsd:dueDate                                    |
| tasktypename           | string  | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskType/mdmavxsd:name           |
| taskTypeDisplayName    | string  | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskType/mdmavxsd:displayName    |
| taskTypeDescription    | string  | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskType/mdmavxsd:description    |
| taskTypePendingBVT     | boolean | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskType/mdmavxsd:pendingBVT     |
| taskTypeDataUpdateType | string  | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskType/mdmavxsd:dataUpdateType |

| Parameter           | Туре   | Expression  |
|---------------------|--------|---|
| taskTypeDisplayType | string | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskType/mdmavxsd:displayType |
| priorityOut         | string | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:taskData/mdmavxsd:priority    |
| workflowVersion     | string | \$ProcessTaskRequest/mdmavxsd:INFATask/mdmavxsd:workflowVersion/text()        |

For more information about updating .bpel files, see the ActiveVOS documentation.

### **Enabling Attachments in Workflows for Subject Areas**

Effective in version 10.3, you can update your customized workflows to allow users to attach files to their tasks. To enable this feature in a customized workflow, update the process that initializes the data and update all the user processes.

**Note:** If you want to restrict the ability to add attachments to some tasks, you can configure the task settings in the Provisioning Tool. For more information about updating the task configuration, see the *Multidomain MDM Provisioning Tool Guide*.

1. In ActiveVOS Designer, open the .bpel file for a customized workflow.

The workflow appears in the canvas.

- 2. Update the process that initializes the data.
  - Select the Initialize Data process.

The **Operations** dialog box appears.

b. Click New Script.

The Script Builder dialog box appears.

c. In the Script box, add the following statement:

```
abx:copyAllAttachments('StartRequest', ' peopleActivityAttachments')
```

Replace StartRequest with the variable name that you use to initialize data in your workflow.

d. Click OK.

The Script Builder dialog box closes, and the script appears in the Operation list.

e. Click **OK**.

The **Operations** dialog box closes.

- 3. Update all the user processes.
  - a. Select a user process.
  - b. Click the Properties tab.
  - c. Click the All tab.
  - d. Expand Attachment Propagation.
  - e. Set From Process to All.
  - f. Set To Process to newOnly.
- 4. Save the .bpel file.

## Redeploy the ActiveVOS Workflows based on Subject Areas

The ActiveVOS workflows for the workflow adapter that is based on subject areas changed in version 10.0 HotFix 2. If you use the workflow adapter based on subject areas, you must redeploy the default workflows that are provided in the Resource Kit. To deploy the Informatica ActiveVOS project that contains the task workflows to the MDM Hub Server, first export the CommonMDM project and then export the MDMWorkflow project.

- 1. In Informatica ActiveVOS Designer, open the BeCommonMDM project to export.
- 2. Click File > Export.
  - The **Export** dialog box opens.
- 3. Under Orchestration, select Contribution Business Process Archive. Click Next.
- In the Deployment URL field under Server Deployment Option, enter the URL for the ActiveVOS instance. Click Finish.
- 5. In the **Deployment Complete** dialog box, click **OK**.
- 6. Repeat all steps for the BeMDMWorkflow project.

You must export the BeCommonMDM project before you export the BeMDMWorkflow project.

## Generating Business Entity and Business Entity Services Configuration Files

To generate business entity and business entity services configuration files, use the Informatica Data Director Configuration Manager.

- 1. In the Configuration Manager **Applications** pane, select the Informatica Data Director application whose configuration you want to generate into a business entity and business entity service configuration.
- 2. Click Generate Business Entity Schema.
  - Configuration Manager generates the business entity and business entity service configuration.
- 3. Configuration Manager displays messages of issues encountered while generating the business entity and business entity services configuration. The messages indicate if Configuration Manager resolved the issue during the generation process and describes the changes Configuration Manager made to resolve the issue. If Configuration Manager did not fix the issue, note the issue and the suggested action you can take to resolve the issue.

#### APPENDIX A

# Troubleshooting the Upgrade Process

If the upgrade fails or you encounter issues during the upgrade, use the following information to troubleshoot the problem.

#### The EAR files do not deploy within the permitted time in JBoss environments.

As you increase the number of Operational Reference Stores, the EAR file deployment time increases. If the EAR file deployment time exceeds the permitted deployment time in JBoss environments, the upgrade fails.

To resolve the issue, increase the permitted deployment time to accommodate the EAR file deployment time. The default permitted deployment time is 600 seconds.

- 1. Increase the value of the deploy.wait.time property in the build.properties file in the following directory: <infamdm installation directory>/hub/server/bin
- 2. Navigate to the following directory: <JBoss installation directory>/standalone/configuration
- 3. Configure the following code in the standalone-full.xml file to increase the timeout value:

#### The Hub Server upgrade fails.

To resolve the issue, redeploy the EAR file to retry the Hub Server upgrade.

**Note:** In JBoss environments, if you manually change the configuration of data sources in the standalone-full.xml file when JBoss is running, you lose the configuration changes when you run the patchInstallSetup script.

- 1. Navigate to the following directory: <MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/server
- Run the following command to deploy the Hub Server application and apply changes to the application server configuration.

**Note:** If you do not have embedded ActiveVOS in your environment, you do not need to include the ActiveVOS user names and passwords in the command.

#### On UNIX

#### WebLogic

```
patchInstallSetup.sh -Dweblogic.password=<WebLogic password> -
Ddatabase.password=<MDM Hub Master database password> -Davos.username=<ActiveVOS</pre>
```

Console username> -Davos.password=<ActiveVOS Console password> -Davos.jdbc.database.password=<ActiveVOS database password>

#### WebSphere with security enabled

patchInstallSetup.sh -Dwebsphere.password=<WebSphere password> Ddatabase.password=<MDM Hub Master database password> -Davos.username=<ActiveVOS
Console username> -Davos.password=<ActiveVOS Console password> Davos.jdbc.database.password=<ActiveVOS database password>

#### WebSphere with security disabled

patchInstallSetup.sh -Ddatabase.password=<MDM Hub Master database password> Davos.username=<ActiveVOS Console username> -Davos.password=<ActiveVOS Console
password> -Davos.jdbc.database.password=<ActiveVOS database password>

#### JBoss

patchInstallsetup.sh -Ddatabase.password=<MDM Hub Master database password> Davos.username=<ActiveVOS Console username> -Davos.password=<ActiveVOS Console
password> -Davos.jdbc.database.password=<ActiveVOS database password>

**Note:** On UNIX, if you include an exclamation mark (!) character in the password, you must include a backslash before the exclamation mark (!) character. For example, if the password is !!cmx!!, enter  $\cdot!cmx!!$ .

#### On Windows

#### WebLogic

patchInstallSetup.bat -Dweblogic.password=<WebLogic password> Ddatabase.password=<MDM Hub Master database password> -Davos.username=<ActiveVOS
Console username> -Davos.password=<ActiveVOS Console password> Davos.jdbc.database.password=<ActiveVOS database password>

#### WebSphere with security enabled

patchInstallSetup.bat -Dwebsphere.password
Qbatabase.password
ActiveVOS
Console username> -Davos.password
ActiveVOS Console password> Davos.jdbc.database.password
ActiveVOS database password>

#### WebSphere with security disabled

patchInstallSetup.bat -Ddatabase.password=<MDM Hub Master database password> Davos.username=<ActiveVOS Console username> -Davos.password=<ActiveVOS Console
password> -Davos.jdbc.database.password=<ActiveVOS database password>

#### JBoss

patchInstallsetup.bat -Ddatabase.password=<MDM Hub Master database password> Davos.username=<ActiveVOS Console username> -Davos.password=<ActiveVOS Console
password> -Davos.jdbc.database.password=<ActiveVOS database password>

The ActiveVOS Console credentials are the same credentials as the administrative user in the application server.

The ActiveVOS database credentials are the same credentials that were used to run the create\_bpm script.

#### The Process Server upgrade fails in a WebLogic environment.

When you upgrade the Process Server in a WebLogic environment, the upgrade might fail with the following error:

```
Unable to start application, deployment error msg: weblogic.management.ManagementException: [Deployer:149196]Rejecting start request for application siperian-mrm-cleanse.ear because stop request is running for the application.
```

To resolve the issue, use the WebLogic Administrative Console to manually deploy the siperian-mrm-cleanse.ear file, and then restart the application server.

#### The Process Server upgrade fails.

To resolve the issue, redeploy the EAR file to retry the Process Server upgrade.

Note: If you manually change the configuration of data sources in the standalone-full.xml file when JBoss is running, you lose the configuration changes when you run the patchInstallSetup script.

- Navigate to the following directory: <MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/cleanse
- Run the following command to deploy the Process Server application and apply changes to the application server configuration.

#### On UNIX

#### WebLogic

```
patchInstallSetup.sh -Dweblogic.password=<WebLogic password> -
Ddatabase.password=<your database password>
```

#### WebSphere

```
patchInstallSetup.sh -Ddatabase.password=<your database password>
JBoss
```

patchInstallsetup.sh -Ddatabase.password=<your database password>

#### On Windows

#### WebLogic

```
patchInstallSetup.bat -Dweblogic.password=<WebLogic password> -
Ddatabase.password=<your database password>
```

#### WebSphere

```
patchInstallSetup.bat -Ddatabase.password=<your database password>
JBoss
   patchInstallsetup.bat -Ddatabase.password=<your database password>
```

Note: On UNIX, if you include an exclamation mark (!) character in the password, you must include a backslash before the exclamation mark (!) character. For example, if the password is !!cmx!!, enter \! \!cmx\!\!.

#### The Informatica Platform Upgrade fails.

To confirm that the Informatica platform installed successfully, see the following Knowledge Base article: https://kb.informatica.com/faq/7/Pages/14/306938.aspx?myk=KB%20306938.

To troubleshoot the Informatica platform installation if it was not successful, see the following Knowledge Base article: https://kb.informatica.com/faq/7/Pages/14/306941.aspx?myk=KB%20306941

#### When I upgrade an Operational Reference Store, Oracle generates error ORA-20005.

If you encounter error ORA-20005 when you run sip ant updateorsdatabase, perform the following steps:

Run the following command to grant the required permissions:

```
dbms java.grant permission(upper('ORS USER'), 'SYS: java.net.SocketPermission', '*',
'connect, resolve');
```

Run the following command to confirm that the Java classes are loaded in Oracle:

```
select dbms java.longname(object name), status from user objects where
object type='JAVA CLASS';
```

3. If the classes are not loaded, run the following command to reload the classes:

```
loadjava -verbose -force -resolve -oracleresolver -user &ors_name/
&ors_passwd@&tns_name siperian-cleansecaller.jar
loadjava -verbose -force -resolve -oracleresolver -user &ors_name/
&ors_passwd@&tns_name_siperian-dbutil.jar
```

#### The Hub Store upgrade fails.

You cannot rerun the Hub Store upgrade on a partially upgraded schema. If the upgrade fails, restore the database from a full backup, and then rerun the Hub Store upgrade.

If the Hub Store upgrade fails because column names contain reserved words, contact Informatica Global Customer Support for scripts to migrate the data to renamed columns.

## After upgrading from a non-English locale, some tables are in English and some are in the language of the locale.

If your Hub Store database environment is set to a non-English locale, you must change the character set to Unicode before you run the upgrade scripts to upgrade the MDM Hub Master Database and Operational Reference Stores. During the upgrade, all table metadata is translated to English with a translation key. If you did not select a Unicode character set, only some tables are translated.

#### Hub Console fails to launch

Verify that you are using a Java runtime environment (JRE) that is supported for the Hub Console. For system requirements, see the Product Availability Matrix for this version of Multidomain MDM on Informatica Network:

https://network.informatica.com/community/informatica-network/product-availability-matrices/overview

#### The Hub Console fails to launch in a JBoss environment

In JBoss environments, if the JBoss application server does not restart, you cannot launch the Hub Console. The MDM Hub generates an error to indicate that the repository layer did not initialize.

To resolve the issue, run the following code in a batch file to restart JBoss:

```
rmdir C:\<JBoss installation directory>\standalone\tmp /s /q
mkdir C:\<JBoss installation directory>\standalone\tmp
C:\<JBoss installation directory>\bin\standalone.bat -c standalone-full.xml -b 0.0.0.0
```

#### Hub Console fails to launch in a DB2 environment

In an MDM Hub environment with DB2 datasources, the Hub Console fails to launch with the following errors:

```
SIP-09070: SIP-10318: Couldn't get users due to data access error.

SIP-10324: There was an unexpected exception when attempting to load data object(s).
java.lang.NullPointerException
```

This issue is caused by a mismatch in the case used for the administrative user name in the MDM Hub and in the application server. For example, the MDM Hub has the administrative user DB2ADMIN (uppercase) while the application server has db2admin (lowercase).

To resolve the issue, ensure that the user name in the application server exactly matches the user name in the MDM Hub.

**Note:** To avoid issues related to case-sensitivity, Informatica recommends using all uppercase letters when defining user names for DB2.

For example, if you are using WebSphere, set the user name in the WebSphere Console.

Open the WebSphere Console.

- 2. Navigate to Resources > Data sources > siperian-cmx\_system-ds > Custom properties.
- 3. In the User field, type in uppercase: DB2ADMIN
- 4. In the Password field, type the password for this user.
- 5. Click Apply, and then click Save.
- Restart WebSphere.
- 7. Launch the Hub Console and log in.

#### In IDD, users cannot use the legacy Data View to view records that are based on subject areas.

The default page to view records in IDD is the Entity View that is based on business entities.

To use the legacy Data View, set dataview.enabled to true in the cmxserver.properties file.

For more information, see the following How-to article: Migrating IDD Applications to the Business Entity Data Model.

#### IDD fails with the error SIP-BV-11500.

IDD can fail with the following error: SIP-BV-11500 Fatal Error Operational Reference Store localhost-orcl-MDM\_SAMPLE does not have a workflow engine configured. Each Operational Reference Store must have a workflow engine configured for use with the IDD even if workflow will not be used.

To resolve this issue, ensure that the primary workflow adapter is configured.

For more information, see the following KB article:

https://kb.informatica.com/solution/23/Pages/55/381456.aspx?myk=381456.

## When you validate the metadata, an error states that the object exists in the metadata but not in the database.

When you use the Repository Manager to fix the issue, the following error occurs: ORA-00955 Name is already used by an existing object.

To resolve the issue, ensure that the correct privileges for the proxy role are granted for the tables that encounter the error. Refer to a table that does not encounter the error to get the list of permissions that are required.

#### On Windows, when match tokens are generated, an error occurs.

The Generate Match Tokens process returns an error that says that the class ssa.ssaname3.jssan3cl cannot be initialized.

- Verify that the PATH environment variable includes the path to the following directory, which contains
  the dynamic linked library (DLL) files for SSA-NAME3: <MDM installation directory>/hub/
  cleanse/lib
- Verify that Microsoft Visual C++ Redistributable for Visual Studio 2015 is installed on the Process Server that performs search and match for the MDM Hub.

3. If Microsoft Visual C++ Redistributable for Visual Studio 2015 is installed, use a dependency checker, such as Dependency Walker (depends.exe), to load jssan3cl.dll and confirm that the Visual C++ Redistributable was successfully applied.

**Tip:** Visual C++ Redistributable for Visual Studio 2015 requires that Windows Server has operating system patches installed. Check the operating system requirements before installing Visual C++ Redistributable. For example, from a baseline version of Windows Server 2012, you must apply around 100 patches (totalling approximately 2 GB) to the operating system before you can successfully install Visual C++ Redistributable.

After you upgrade in a Microsoft SQL Server environment on a WebLogic application server, you cannot log in to the Hub Console.

A null pointer exception occurs when you log in to the Hub Console.

To resolve the issue, comment out the drop commands, create schema commands, and any role commands in the xa\_install.sql script located in  $Microsoft SQL Server installation directory \sqljdbc 4.0\enu\xa. Run the script, and then restart the application server.$ 

The upgrade component patchInstallSetup fails when you install the Hub Server on a WebSphere Application Server.

To resolve the issue, open the file <WebSphere profile home>/properties/soap.client.props and increase com.ibm.SOAP.requestTimeout, and then restart the WebSphere server profile. Run patchInstallSetup.bat again.

The entity360view.ear file fails to deploy when you upgrade the Hub Server in IBM AIX environments.

To resolve the issue, run the patchInstallSetup.sh script.

#### APPENDIX B

## Frequently Asked Questions

#### Do we need a new license file to upgrade?

Yes. If you are upgrading from aMultidomain MDM version 10.1.x or earlier, you need a new license file.

#### Can we use database user exits from a pre-10.0 version?

No. Database user exits that run in the database layer are deprecated in version 10.0 and later.

#### Why do we need to provide the DBA username and password during the upgrade process?

The upgrade process performs actions that require DBA-level permissions, such as granting privileges and creating sequences. The DBA credentials are necessary to allow the upgrade process to perform these actions.

#### What happens to the existing version of ActiveVOS during the upgrade process?

If you have ActiveVOS installed in your environment and you do an in-place upgrade, the upgrade process will install the latest version of ActiveVOS if your environment does not already have it. To see which version of ActiveVOS is required, see the Product Availability Matrix on Informatica Network:

https://network.informatica.com/community/informatica-network/product-availability-matrices/overview

## Is it mandatory to install ActiveVOS during the MDM upgrade process in an environment that does not have ActiveVOS installed?

No. During the upgrade process, you are prompted to choose whether you want to install ActiveVOS.

#### Has the recommended screen resolution for Informatica Data Director changed in this version?

No, the recommended screen resolution has not changed. The recommended screen resolution for Informatica Data Director is 1280 x 1024.

## Do we need to upgrade Informatica Data Quality when we upgrade to Multidomain MDM version 10.2 or later?

Yes, if you use Informatica Data Quality (IDQ) in your environment, you must upgrade to version 10.1 of IDQ. For the system requirements, see the Product Availability Matrix on Informatica Network:

https://network.informatica.com/community/informatica-network/product-availability-matrices/overview

#### How do we customize MDM Hub security?

For information about customizing MDM Hub security, see the *Multidomain MDM Security Guide* and see the How-to article *Using the Security Configuration Utility in Multidomain MDM*.

#### Is Java 8 supported?

Yes, this version of Multidomain MDM supports Java 8. For the system requirements, see the Product Availability Matrix on Informatica Network:

https://network.informatica.com/community/informatica-network/product-availability-matrices/overview

Note: ActiveVOS requires Java 7.

#### If we do not install the Informatica platform, why is the Informatica platform EAR file deployed?

The Informatica platform EAR is deployed to enable the MDM Hub to communicate with the platform. If the Informatica platform is not installed, the EAR file is deployed as a passive application.

If we migrate to use Informatica platform staging, can we set up delta detection, hard delete detection, and audit trails?

By default, Informatica platform staging does not include support for these features. Build your own customization outside the MDM Hub to provide these functions.

#### APPENDIX C

# Processing Existing ActiveVOS Tasks

This appendix includes the following topics:

- Processing Existing ActiveVOS Tasks Overview, 177
- Migration Properties, 177
- Running the Migration Script with a Properties File, 178
- Running the Migration Script with Properties on the Command Line, 179

## Processing Existing ActiveVOS Tasks Overview

To work with ActiveVOS tasks that were created before Multidomain MDM version 10.1, routinely run a migration script to populate the tasks with the required presentation parameters. If you do not run the migration script, the tasks do not appear in the Task Manager. Run the migration script until you process all the tasks that were created before you upgraded to version 10.1.

The migration script requires that you set some properties. You can add the properties to a build file or you can add them in the command line.

## **Migration Properties**

The following table describes the migration properties:

| Property                        | Description  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| avos.jdbc.database.driver.jar   | Path to the JAR file that contains the JDBC driver for ActiveVOS database.  This parameter is populated during the Hub Server installation without the avos prefix in <infamdm directory="" installation="">\conf\avos.install.properties.</infamdm> |
| avos.jdbc.database.driver.class | JDBC driver class for ActiveVOS database.  This parameter is populated during the Hub Server installation without the avos prefix in <infamdm directory="" installation="">\conf\avos.install.properties.</infamdm>                                  |

| Property                    | Description  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| avos.jdbc.database.url      | ActiveVOS database connection URL.  This parameter is populated during the Hub Server installation without the avos prefix in <infamdm directory="" installation="">\conf\avos.install.properties.</infamdm> |
| avos.jdbc.database.username | ActiveVOS database user name.  This parameter is populated during the Hub Server installation without the avos prefix in <infamdm directory="" installation="">\conf\avos.install.properties.</infamdm>      |
| avos.jdbc.database.password | ActiveVOS database password.   |
| avos.ws.protocol            | The protocol for the ActiveVOS server connection. Can be http or https.  |
| avos.ws.host                | Host name of the application server where ActiveVOS runs.  |
| avos.ws.port                | Port number of the application server connection.  |
| avos.ws.trusted.username    | User name of the trusted user.  Note: The trusted user is created as part of the Multidomain MDM installation and upgrade process.   |
| avos.ws.trusted.password    | Password for the trusted user.  Note: The trusted user is created as part of the Multidomain MDM installation and upgrade process.   |
| avos.hub.username           | MDM Hub super user that belongs to all task management roles.  |
| avos.ws.pagesize            | Number of tasks processed in one database transaction and batch-loaded from ActiveVOS.   |
| avos.ws.statuses            | Optional. Comma-separated list of ActiveVOS task statuses to be processed. For example, READY or IN_PROGRESS. By default all tasks are processed.  |

## Running the Migration Script with a Properties File

Create an MDM user that belongs to the roles associated with the workflows. Add the migration properties to the Hub Server build.properties file, and then run the MDM Hub Master Database with the migration script command. After the migration, task owners can continue to take action on their assigned tasks.

Run the migration script on a regular schedule. After all the tasks for the subject area workflow adapter are processed, you no longer have to run the script and you can delete the MDM user that you created for this purpose.

- Create an MDM Hub user, and assign the user all the roles that participate in workflows.
   For example, the predefined workflows use the following roles: DataSteward, Manager, and SrManager.
- 2. Open the following file in a text editor:
  - <MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/server/bin/build.properties
- 3. Add the migration properties to the build.properties file. For a list of properties, see "Migration Properties" on page 177.
- 4. Open a command prompt.

5. Navigate to the following directory:

```
<MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/server/bin
```

- 6. Run the MDM Hub Master Database upgrade script with the migration script command:
  - On UNIX. sip ant.sh migrate-avos-sa-tasks
  - On Windows. sip ant.bat migrate-avos-sa-tasks

## Running the Migration Script with Properties on the Command Line

Create an MDM user that belongs to the roles associated with the workflows. Open a command prompt and run the script with the desired properties. After the migration, task owners can continue to take action on their assigned tasks.

Run the migration script on a regular schedule. After all the tasks for the subject area workflow adapter are processed, you no longer have to run the script and you can delete the MDM user that you created for this purpose.

- Create an MDM Hub user, and assign the user all the roles that participate in workflows.
   For example, the predefined workflows use the following roles: DataSteward, Manager, and SrManager.
- 2. Open a command prompt.
- 3. Navigate to the following directory:

```
<MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/server/bin
```

- 4. Run the MDM Hub Master Database upgrade script with the migration script command and the migration properties. For a list of properties, see "Migration Properties" on page 177. For example, you can run one of the following commands:
  - On UNIX.

```
sip_ant.sh migrate-avos-sa-tasks -Davos.jdbc.database.password=!!cmx!!
-Davos.ws.protocol=http -Davos.ws.host=localhost -Davos.ws.port=8080 -Davos.ws.pagesize=100
-Davos.ws.trusted.username=avos -Davos.ws.trusted.password=avos -Davos.hub.username=admin
```

· On Windows.

```
sip_ant.bat migrate-avos-sa-tasks -Davos.jdbc.database.password=!!cmx!!
-Davos.ws.protocol=http -Davos.ws.host=localhost -Davos.ws.port=8080 -
Davos.ws.pagesize=100
-Davos.ws.trusted.username=avos -Davos.ws.trusted.password=avos -
Davos.hub.username=admin
```

#### APPENDIX D

## **Configuring Metadata Caching**

This appendix includes the following topic:

• Configuring Metadata Caching (Optional), 180

## **Configuring Metadata Caching (Optional)**

The metadata caches manage items such as data objects, repository objects, and search tokens. The MDM Hub uses Infinispan for metadata caching. Infinispan is installed with the Hub Server. For the caches that are used by the Hub Server, the Infinispan configuration file contains default attribute values.

In version 10.1 and earlier, the MDM Hub used JBoss Cache for metadata caching. After you upgrade from one of these versions, the MDM Hub Server uses the Infinispan configuration file instead of the JBoss Cache configuration file.

If the JBoss Cache configuration file was edited in the previous version of MDM Hub, you might need to edit the Infinispan configuration file. It depends on why the file was edited.

#### **Network policy**

If the JBoss Cache file was edited to work around your organization's network policy, update the Infinispan file and the jgroups\* file with the same policy changes.

#### Performance

If the JBoss Cache file was edited to improve cache performance, first try running the MDM Hub with the default Infinispan values. If you experience performance issues, copy the changed values from the JBoss Cache configuration file to the Infinispan configuration file. If you still experience performance issues, familiarize yourself with Infinispan and adjust the values to better suit your environment.

## Infinispan Attributes

The following table summarizes default Infinispan attribute values and indicates how the attributes map to the former JBoss attribute:

| Infinispan<br>Element and<br>Attribute | Default Value          | Description  | JBoss Attribute        |
|--|------------------------|--|------------------------|
| locking<br>acquire-<br>timeout         | 60000                  | Maximum time during which the Hub Server can try to acquire a lock.  | lockAcquisitionTimeout |
| transaction stop-timeout               | 30000                  | When a cache stops, this attribute sets the maximum time that Infinispan waits while the Hub Server finishes remote and local transactions.  | sync replTimeout       |
| transport<br>cluster                   | infinispan-<br>cluster | Name for the underlying group communication cluster.   | clustering             |
| transport<br>stack                     | UDP                    | Type of configuration: UDP or TCP. The configurations are defined in the jgroups-udp.xml file and the jgroups-tcp.xml file.  | jgroupsConfig          |
| transport<br>node-name                 | \$node\$               | Name of the current node. The Hub Server sets this attribute.  The node-name defaults to a combination of the host name and a random number. The number differentiates multiple nodes on the same host.  |                        |
| transport<br>machine                   | \$machine\$            | ID of the machine where the node runs. The Hub Server sets this attribute.   | _                      |
| expiration<br>lifespan                 | -                      | Maximum lifespan of a cache entry in milliseconds. When a cache entry exceeds its lifespan, the entry expires within the cluster. If you need to optimize performance, increase the lifespan for the following caches: DISABLE_WHEN_LOCK, DATA_OBJECTS, and REPOS_OBJECTS. | eviction timeToLive    |
|  |                        | For example, you can increase the lifespan from one hour (3600000) to one day (86400000).  |                        |
|  |                        | Each cache has its own default value for this attribute. To find the default values, open the inifinspanConfig.xml file.   |                        |
| expiration interval                    | -                      | Maximum interval for checking the lifespan. If you need to optimize performance, increase the interval for the following caches: DISABLE_WHEN_LOCK, DATA_OBJECTS, and REPOS_OBJECTS.   | eviction timeToLive    |
|  |                        | For example, you can increase the interval from five seconds (5000) to five minutes (300000).  |                        |
|  |                        | Each cache has its own default value for this attribute. To find the default values, open the inifinspanConfig.xml file.   |                        |

#### **Editing Infinispan Attributes**

To configure metadata caching attributes, edit the infinispanConfig.xml file for the Hub Server. For help with the Infinispan configuration, see the Infinispan documentation.

**Note:** The Process Server also has an Infinispan configuration file. The default attribute values should be sufficient, however if you notice issues with the performance of the Process Server, you can fine-tune the attribute values.

- 1. Navigate to the following directory: <MDM Hub installation directory>/hub/server/resources
- 2. Make a backup copy of the following file: infinispanConfig.xml
- 3. Open the infinispanConfig.xml file and find the Infinispan version number, which appears in the xsi:schemaLocation attribute.
- 4. Review the documentation for the Infinispan version.

Note: In the following URLs, substitute the version number wherever the path contains #.#.

- To view the configuration schema, go to the URL that is contained in the xsi:schemaLocation attribute in the file.
- To learn about the attributes, go to https://docs.jboss.org/infinispan/<#.#.x>/configdocs/
- To learn about Infinispan, go to http://infinispan.org/docs/<#.#.x>/ and select the "Frequently Asked Questions" link.
- 5. Edit the file and save it.

## INDEX

| A   | F   |
|---|---|
| ActiveVOS silent installer properties <u>94</u> URN, setting <u>156</u> , <u>162</u> ActiveVOS Console administrative user          | file attachments enabling in custom workflows <u>159</u> enabling, in workflows for subject areas <u>16.</u>  |
| abAdmin role <u>57, 62, 71</u><br>creating <u>57, 62, 71</u>  | Н   |
| attachments enabling in custom workflows <u>159</u> enabling, in workflows for subject areas <u>167</u>                             | Hub Server reapplying the upgrade 98 silent properties file 94  |
| C   | silent upgrade <u>93</u> , <u>96</u><br>upgrading in graphical mode <u>88</u><br>Hub Server upgrade   |
| cmxserver.log file <u>97</u> , <u>108</u> configuring IBM DB2 for the MDM Hub <u>46</u> configuring JBoss                           | about <u>87</u><br>console mode <u>91</u><br>Hub Server upgrades<br>log files 97  |
| for the MDM Hub <u>53</u> configuring Microsoft SQL Server for the MDM Hub <u>42</u>  | Hub Store tablespaces, creating <u>36</u> , <u>46</u> Hub Store upgrade   |
| configuring Oracle disable the Oracle Recycle Bin <u>36</u> for the MDM Hub <u>36</u>   | about <u>78</u> Operational Reference Store upgrade <u>82</u>   |
| set the init.ora parameters <u>36</u> configuring WebSphere for Informatica Data Director <u>77</u> custom code, testing <u>138</u> | Hub Store upgrades Master Database <u>79</u> hub_cleanse_install.bin <u>99</u> hub_cleanse_install.exe <u>99</u> hub_install.bin <u>88</u> hub_install.exe 88   |
| D   | hub_mstan.exe so  |
| Data Director upgrade tests 139 upgrade tests for subject areas 139 database create manually 47 database debug log disabling 137    | infamdm_installer_debug.txt file <u>97</u> , <u>108</u><br>Infinispan<br>configuring <u>182</u><br>Informatica ActiveVOS<br>creating the schema <u>39</u> , <u>43</u> , <u>50</u>                               |
| databases connection testing <u>36</u>  | J   |
| elasticsearch archive extracting 142 environment report review 133 saving 133   | Java options configuring 68 JBoss starting on JBoss cluster nodes 59 starting on standalone JBoss instances 58 JBossstarting on cluster nodes starting on standalone instances 58 JVM parameters configuring 68 |

| L  | R  |
|--|--|
| log files  | readiness report                               |
|  | •  |
| application server log files 97, 108                                 | about <u>26</u>                                |
| Cleanse Match Server upgrades 108                                    | check codes <u>29</u>                          |
| cmxserver.log file 97, 108   | generating 31                                  |
| Hub Server upgrades 97   | regenerating <u>32</u>                         |
| Infamdm_Cleanse_Match_Server_InstallLog.xml file 108                 | registering an Operational Reference Store 134 |
| infamdm_installer_debug.txt file 97, 108                             | Resource Kit                                   |
| Infamdm_Server_InstallLog.xml file 97                                | uninstalling 110                               |
| postInstallSetup.log file <u>97</u> , <u>108</u>                     | upgrading <u>110</u>                           |
| M  | S  |
| match population   | schema owner 134                               |
| enabling 106   | search   |
| MDM Hub  | stopwords 148                                  |
| upgrade tests 138  | stopwords.txt file 148                         |
| MDM Hub Master Database upgrade                                      | synonyms 148                                   |
| silent mode 81   | synonyms.txt file 148                          |
| verbose mode 79  | words to ignore 148                            |
| metadata   | silent upgrade                                 |
| validating 131   | of Hub Server 96                               |
| validation messages, resolving 132                                   | running the Process Server silent upgrade 104  |
| metadata validation  | stopwords.txt file                             |
| validation checks 131  | customizing 148                                |
| Microsoft SQL Server   | synonyms.txt file                              |
| configuring 42   | customizing 148                                |
| data file store 43   | <u> </u>                                       |
| distributed transactions 42  |  |
| installing 42  | Т  |
| ODBC Driver 43   | I .  |
| unixODBC Driver 43   | tablespaces                                    |
|  | creating <u>36</u> , <u>46</u>                 |
|  | temporary data tables                          |
| lacktriangle   | MI_D_* <u>28</u>                               |
|  | MI_F_* <u>28</u>                               |
| Operational Reference Store  | MI_FIX_IS_DONE <u>28</u>                       |
| registering <u>22</u>  | MI_I_* <u>28</u>                               |
| Operational Reference Store upgrade                                  | MI_M_* <u>28</u>                               |
| silent mode <u>85</u>  | MI_R_* <u>28</u>                               |
| verbose mode <u>82</u>   | MI_REPORT 28                                   |
|  | MI_SQL_SAMPLES 28                              |
| <b>B</b>   | testing  |
| Р  | custom code <u>138</u>                         |
|  | tests  |
| postInstallSetup.log file 97, 108                                    | upgrade tests <u>137</u>                       |
| preface 9  | tns name                                       |
| preparing  | adding <u>36</u>                               |
| registering an Operational Reference Store <u>134</u> Process Server | troubleshooting post-installation process 169  |
| reapplying the upgrade 109   | post-installation process 109                  |
| silent properties file 103   |  |
| silent upgrade 103   | 11   |
| upgrading in console mode <u>101</u>                                 | U  |
| upgrading in console mode 101 upgrading in graphical mode 99         | uninstalling                                   |
| Process Server upgrades  | Resource Kit 110                               |
| about 99   | upgrade  |
| log files 108  | Master Database 79                             |
| proxy role   | upgrade process                                |
| assigning to user 133  | clean upgrade 13                               |
| proxy user   | in-place upgrade 13                            |
| configuring 133  | upgrade tests                                  |
| gwg <u></u>  | about 137                                      |
|  | Data Director with business entities 139       |
|  | Data Director with subject areas 139           |
|  | Hub Console tools 138                          |

```
upgrade tests (continued)
Provisioning tool 138
upgrading
guidelines 12
overview 11, 12
restarting environment 117
URN
setting ActiveVOS 156, 162

V
validation results
saving 132
```



WebLogic configuring 59

```
WebSphere
configuring 67
WebSphere administrative security
running the Hub Server PostInstallSetup script 125
running the Process Server PostInstallSetup script 125
uninstalling the EAR files 124
WebSphere security
unregistering the ORS 123
workflows
custom, enabling file attachments 159
workflows for subject areas
custom, enabling file attachments 167
```